

# User's Manual



24/48-Port 10/100TX + 4-Port Gigabit Managed Switch

FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S



www.PLANET.com.tw



### Trademarks

Copyright © PLANET Technology Corp. 2014.

Contents are subject to revision without prior notice.

PLANET is a registered trademark of PLANET Technology Corp. All other trademarks belong to their respective owners.

### Disclaimer

PLANET Technology does not warrant that the hardware will work properly in all environments and applications, and makes no warranty and representation, either implied or expressed, with respect to the quality, performance, merchantability, or fitness for a particular purpose. PLANET has made every effort to ensure that this User's Manual is accurate; PLANET disclaims liability for any inaccuracies or omissions that may have occurred.

Information in this User's Manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of PLANET. PLANET assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies that may be contained in this User's Manual. PLANET makes no commitment to update or keep current the information in this User's Manual, and reserves the right to make improvements to this User's Manual and/or to the products described in this User's Manual, at any time without notice.

If you find information in this manual that is incorrect, misleading, or incomplete, we would appreciate your comments and suggestions.

### **FCC Warning**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the Instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

### **CE Mark Warning**

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

### **Energy Saving Note of the Device**

This power required device does not support Standby mode operation. For energy saving, please remove the power cable to disconnect the device from the power circuit. In view of saving the energy and reducing the unnecessary power consumption, it is strongly suggested to remove the power connection for the device if this device is not intended to be active.

### **WEEE Warning**



To avoid the potential effects on the environment and human health as a result of the presence of hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment, end users of electrical and electronic equipment should understand the meaning of the crossed-out wheeled bin symbol. Do not dispose of WEEE as unsorted municipal waste and have to collect such WEEE separately.

### Revision

PLANET 24/48-Port 10/100TX + 4-Port Gigabit Managed Switch User's Manual FOR MODELS: FGSW-2840(V1) / FGSW-4840S (V3) REVISION: 1.0 (September 2014) Part No: EM-FGSW-2840\_FGSW-4840S\_v1.0



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION	9
1.1 Package Contents	9
1.2 Product Description	10
1.3 How to Use This Manual	11
1.4 Product Features	12
1.5 Product Specifications	14
2. INSTALLATION	
2.1 Hardware Description	17
2.1.1 Switch Front Panel	17
2.1.2 LED Indications	18
2.1.3 Switch Rear Panel	
2.2 Installing the Switch	21
2.2.1 Desktop Installation	21
2.2.2 Rack Mounting	
2.2.3 Installing the SFP transceiver	
3. SWITCH MANAGEMENT	
3.1 Requirements	26
3.2 Management Access Overview	27
2.2 Web Menagement	77
3.3 web management	
3.4 SNMP-based Network Management	
4. WEB CONFIGURATION	
4.1 Main Web Page	32
4.2 System	
4.2.1 System Information	
4.2.1.1 System Summary	35
4.2.1.2 Device Description	
4.2.1.3 System Time	
4.2.1.4 Daylight Saving Time	
4.2.1.5 System IP	
4.2.2 User Management	41



4.2.2.2 User Config	
4.2.3 System Tools	
4.2.3.1 Config Restore	
4.2.3.2 Config Backup	
4.2.3.3 Firmware Upgrade	
4.2.3.4 System Reboot	
4.2.3.5 System Reset	49
4.2.4 Access Security	
4.2.4.1 Access Control	51
4.2.4.2 SSL Config	53
4.2.4.3 SSH Config	
4.3 Switching	61
4.3.1 Port	
4.3.1.1 Port Config	
4.3.1.2 Port Mirror	65
4.3.1.3 Port Security	
4.3.1.4 Port Isolation	
4.3.1.5 Loopback Detection	
4.3.2 LAG	
4.3.2.1 LAG Table	
4.3.2.2 Static LAG	
4.3.2.3 LACP Config	
4.3.3 Traffic Monitor	
4.3.3.1 Traffic Summary	
4.3.3.2 Traffic Statistics	
4.3.4 MAC Address	
4.3.4.1 Address Table	86
4.3.4.2 Static Address	
4.3.4.3 Dynamic Address	
4.3.4.4 Filtering Address	
4.3.5 DHCP Filtering	
4.4 VLAN	
4.4.1 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN	
4.4.2 VLAN Config	
4.5.1 STP Config	
4.5.1.1 STP Config	
4.5.1.2 STP Summary	
4.5.2 Port Config	
4.5.2.1 Port Config	



4.5.3 MSTP Instance	
4.5.3.1 Region Config	
4.5.3.2 Instance Config	
4.5.3.3 Instance Port Config	
4.5.4 STP Security	133
4.5.4.1 Port Protect	134
4.5.4.2 TC Protect	
4.6 Multicast	
4.6.1 IGMP Snooping	140
4.6.1.1 Snooping Config	142
4.6.1.2 Port Config	143
4.6.1.3 VLAN Config	144
4.6.1.4 Multicast VLAN	146
4.6.2 Multicast IP	
4.6.2.1 Multicast IP Table	
4.6.2.2 Static Multicast IP	
.4.6.3 Multicast Filter	
4.6.3.1 IP-Range	
4.6.3.2 Port Filter	154
4.6.4 Packet Statistics	
4.6.4.1 Packet Statistics	
4.7 QoS	159
4.7.1 DiffServ	
4.7.1.1 Port Priority	
4.7.1.2 802.1P/CoS mapping	
4.7.1.3 DSCP Priority	
4.7.1.4 Schedule Mode	
4.7.2 Bandwidth Control	
4.7.2.1 Rate Limit	
4.7.2.2 Storm Control	
4.7.3 Voice VLAN	
4.7.3.1 Global Config	
4.7.3.2 Port Config	
4.7.3.3 OUI Config	
4.8 ACL	
4.8.1 ACL Config	
4.8.1.1 ACL Summary	
4.8.1.2 ACL Create	
4.8.1.3 MAC ACL	



4.8.1.4 Standard-IP ACL	
4.8.1.5 Extend-IP ACL	
4.8.2 Policy Config	
4.8.2.1 Policy Summary	
4.8.2.2 Policy Create	
4.8.2.3 Action Create	191
4.8.3 Policy Binding	
4.8.3.1 Binding Table	
4.8.3.2 Port Binding	
4.8.3.3 VLAN Binding	
4.9 SNMP	
4.9.1 SNMP Config	
4.9.1.1 Global Config	
4.9.1.2 SNMP View	
4.9.1.3 SNMP Group	
4.9.1.4 SNMP User	
4.9.1.5 SNMP Community	
4.9.2 Notification	
4.9.2.1 Notification Config	
4.9.3 RMON	211
4.9.3.1 History Control	212
4.9.3.2 Event Config	213
4.9.3.3 Alarm Config	215
4.10 Maintenance	217
4.10.1 System Monitor	218
4.10.1.1 CPU Monitor	219
4.10.1.2 Memory Monitor	
4.10.2 Log	
4.10.2.1 Log Table	
4.10.2.2 Local Log	
4.10.2.3 Remote Log	
4.10.2.4 Backup Log	
4.10.3 Device Diagnostics	
4.10.3.1 Cable Test	
4.10.3.2 Loopback	
4.10.4 Network Diagnostics	231
4.10.4.1 Ping Test	232
4.10.4.2 Tracert	233
4.11 Save Config	234



4.12 Logout	235
5. COMMAND LINE INTERFACE	
5.1 Accessing the CLI	236
5.2 Telnet Login	236
6. COMMAND LINE MODE	
6.1 User EXEC Mode Commands	239
6.1.1 broadcast command	239
6.1.2 enable command	239
6.1.3 logout command	240
6.1.4 loopback Command	
6.1.5 ping command	
6.1.6 tracert command	240
6.1.7 exit command	240
6.1.8 history command	241
6.2 Privileged Mode Commands	241
6.2.1 broadcast command	241
6.2.2 configure command	241
6.2.3 copy command	241
6.2.4 disable command	241
6.2.5 firmware command	242
6.2.6 logout command	242
6.2.7 loopback Command	242
6.2.8 ping command	242
6.2.9 reboot command	242
6.2.10 reset command	243
6.2.11 tracert command	243
6.2.12 Clear command	243
6.2.13 exit command	243
6.2.14 history command	243
6.2.15 show command	244
6.3 Global Config Mode Commands	245
6.3.1 access-list Command	245
6.3.2 Contact-info Command	245
6.3.3 enable Command	245
6.3.4 hostname Command	246
6.3.5 interface Command	246
6.3.6 ip Command	246



6.3.7 lacp Command		
6.3.8 location Command		
6.3.9 logging Command		
6.3.10 loopback-detection Command		
6.3.11 mac Command		
6.3.12 monitor Command		
6.3.13 port-channel Command		
6.3.14 qos Command		
6.3.15 rmon Command		
6.3.16 snmp-server Command		
6.3.17 spanning tree Command		
6.3.18 system-time Command		
6.3.19 user Command		
6.3.20 vlan Command		
6.3.21 voice Command		
6.3.22 clear Command		
6.3.23 end Command		
6.3.24 exit Command		
6.3.25 history Command		
6.3.26 show Command		
7. SWITCH OPERATION		
7.1 Address Table	256	
7.2 Learning	256	
7.3 Forwarding & Filtering	256	
7.4 Store-and-Forward	256	
7.5 Auto-Negotiation	257	
8. TROUBLESHOOTING		
APPENDIX A		
A.1 Switch's RJ45 Pin Assignments 1000Mbps, 1000Base-T		
A.2 10/100Mbps, 10/100Base-TX		



# **1. INTRODUCTION**

Thank you for purchasing PLANET 24 / 48-Port 10/100TX + 4-Port Gigabit Managed Switch, FGSW-2840/FGSW-4840S. The descriptions of these two models are shown below:

FGSW-2840	24-Port 10/100TX + 4-Port Gigabit with 2 Combo 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
FGSW-4840S	48-Port 10/100TX + 2-Port Gigabit + 2-Port 1000X SFP Managed Switch

"Managed Switch" mentioned in this quick installation guide refers to the FGSW-2840 and FGSW-4840S.

# 1.1 Package Contents

Open the box of the Managed Switch and carefully unpack it. The box should contain the following items:

- The FGSW-2840 or FGSW-4840S x 1 (With SFP Dust Cap x 2)
- Quick Installation Guide x 1
- Power Cord x 1
- Rubber Feet x 4
- Two 19" Rack-mounting Brackets Kit x 1

If any of these are missing or damaged, please contact your dealer immediately; if possible, retain the carton including the original packing material, and use them again to repack the product in case there is a need to return it to us for repair.



# **1.2 Product Description**



### High-Density, Full-Functioned, Layer 2 Managed Switch for Enterprise and Campus Networking

The FGSW-2840 and FGSW-4840S is a 24/48-Port 10/100Mbps Fast Ethernet Switch with 2/4-Port Gigabit and 2-Port Gigabit SFP interfaces, which comes with a high-performance switch architecture, capable of providing non-blocking 12.8Gbps (FGSW-2840) / 17.6Gbps (FGSW-4840S) switch fabric and wire-speed throughput at 9.5Mpps (FGSW-2840) / 13Mpps (FGSW-4840S). Its four built-in GbE uplink ports also offer incredible extensibility, flexibility and connectivity to the core switch or servers. The powerful features of QoS and network security offered by the FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S enable the switch to perform effective data traffic control for ISP and enterprise VoIP, video streaming and multicast applications. It is ideal for the remote access layer of campus or enterprise networks and the aggregation layer of IP metropolitan networks.

### **Robust Layer 2 Feature**

The FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S can be programmed for advanced switch management functions such as port mirror, port security, port isolation and loopback detection. It also features the dynamic **port link aggregation** (Static Trunk and LACP), **802.1Q VLAN**, **Rapid Spanning Tree protocol** (RSTP) and **Multiple Spanning Tree protocol** (MSTP), Static / Dynamic / Filtering MAC address, **IGMP Snooping**, Multicast IP and Multicast Filter and DHCP filtering. Via aggregation of supporting ports, the FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S allow the operation of a high-speed trunk to combine with multiple ports. It enables a maximum of up to 6 groups of 4 ports for trunk and supports fail-over as well.

### **Enhanced Security**

The FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S offer comprehensive Layer 2 to Layer 4 Access Control List (ACL) for enforcing security to the edge. It can be used to restrict network access by denying packets based on source and destination IP address.

### **Efficient Traffic Control**

The FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S is loaded with robust QoS features and powerful traffic management to enhance services to business-class data, voice, and video solutions. The functionality includes broadcast / multicast / unicast **storm control**, per port **bandwidth control**, 802.1p / CoS / IP DSCP QoS priority and remarking. It guarantees the best performance at VoIP and video stream transmission, and empowers the enterprises to take full advantages of the limited network resources.

### **Enhanced and Secure Management**

For efficient management, the FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S are equipped with **Web**, **Telnet** and **SNMP** management interfaces. With the built-in Web-based management interface, the FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S offer an easy-to-use, platform-independent management and configuration facility. By supporting the standard Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), the switch can be managed via any standard management software. For text-based management, the switch can be accessed via Telnet .



Moreover, the FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S offers secure remote management by supporting **HTTPS** and **SNMPv3** connections which encrypt the packet content at each session.

### **Flexible Extension Solution**

The two mini-GBIC slots built in the FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S are compatible with the **1000Base-SX/LX** SFP (Small Form-factor Pluggable) fiber transceiver to uplink to the backbone switch and monitoring center in long distance. The distance can be extended from 550 meters (multi-mode fiber) to 10/20/30/40/50/60/70/120 kilometers (single-mode fiber or WDM fiber). They are well suited for applications within the enterprise data centers and distributions, the two mini-GBIC slots built in the FGSW-2840 also compatible with 100Base-FX SFP fiber transceiver.

# 1.3 How to Use This Manual

### This User Manual is structured as follows:

### Section 2 INSTALLATION

The section explains the functions of the Managed Switch and how to physically install the Managed Switch.

### Section 3 SWITCH MANAGEMENT

The section contains the information about the software function of the Managed Switch.

### Section 4 WEB CONFIGURATION

The section explains how to manage the Managed Switch by Web interface.

### Section 5 COMMAND LINE INTERFACE

The section describes how to use the Command Line interface (CLI).

### Section 6 COMMAND LINE MODE

The section explains how to manage the Managed Switch by Command Line interface.

### Section 7 SWITCH OPERATION

The chapter explains how to do the switch operation of the Managed Switch.

### Section 8 TROUBLESHOOTING

The chapter explains how to troubleshoot the Managed Switch.

### **Appendix A**

The section contains cable information of the Managed Switch.



# **1.4 Product Features**

### Physical Port (FGSW-2840)

- 24-port 10/100Base-TX Fast Ethernet RJ45 copper, auto MDI / MDIX
- 4-port 10/100/1000Base-T Gigabit Ethernet RJ45 copper, auto MDI / MDIX
- **2 Combo 100/1000Base-X** mini-GBIC/SFP slots (Share with Port 27/28)
- Reset button for system factory default

### Physical Port (FGSW-4840S)

- **48-port 10/100Base-TX** Fast Ethernet RJ45 copper, auto MDI / MDIX
- 2-port 10/100/1000Base-T Gigabit Ethernet RJ45 copper, auto MDI / MDIX
- 2 1000Base-X mini-GBIC/SFP slots
- Reset button for system factory default

### Layer 2 Features

- Prevents packet loss with back pressure (half-duplex) and IEEE 802.3x pause frame flow control (full-duplex)
- High-performance Store and Forward architecture, and runt/CRC filtering eliminates erroneous packets to optimize the network bandwidth
- Supports VLAN
  - IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN, up to 512VLAN groups, out of 4094 VLAN IDs
  - Management VLAN

### Supports Spanning Tree Protocol

- STP (Spanning Tree Protocol)
- RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol)
- MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol)
- Loop Guard, Root Guard, TC, BPDU Guard, STP BPDU Guard, BPDU Filtering
- Supports Link Aggregation
  - IEEE 802.3ad Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)
  - Cisco ether-channel (Static Trunk)
  - Maximum 6 trunk groups, up to 4 ports per trunk group
- Provides port mirror (many-to-1)

### Quality of Service

- Ingress / Egress Rate Limit per port bandwidth control
- Storm Control support
  - Broadcast / Unknown Unicast / Unknown Multicast
- Traffic classification
  - IEEE 802.1p CoS
  - DSCP / ToS priority
- Strict priority, Weighted Round Robin (WRR) and Equal CoS policies
- Voice VLAN



### Multicast

- IGMP Snooping v1, v2 and v3
- Multicast IP Table / Static Multicast IP
- Multicast Filter

### Security

- L2 / L3 / L4 Access Control List
- MAC Security
  - Static MAC
  - MAC Filtering
- Port Security for Source MAC address entries filtering
- Port Isolation, loopback detection
- DHCP Filtering

### Management

- Switch Management Interface
  - Web switch management
  - Telnet Command Line Interface
  - SNMP v1, v2c and v3
  - SSL v2, v3 / SSH v1,v2 secure access
  - IP / MAC / Port-based Web access control
- Static, DHCP and BooTP for IP address assignment
- System Maintenance
  - Firmware upload / download via HTTP
  - Configuration upload / download through HTTP
  - Hardware reset button for system reset to factory default
  - System CPU / Memory status monitor
- System Time Setting

### - Manual Setting

- Network Time Protocol
- PC clock synchronization
- Daylight Saving Time Setting
- SNMP trap for interface Link Up and Link Down notification
- System Local Log / remote log / backup log
- Four RMON groups (history, statistics, alarms and events)
- Virtual Cable Test / Loop Back Test



# **1.5 Product Specifications**

Product	FGSW-2840	FGSW-4840S	
Hardware Specifications			
Hardware Version	1	3	
10/100TX Copper Ports (MDI/MDIX)	24	48	
10/100/1000T Copper Ports (MDI/MDIX)	4	2	
SFP/mini-GBIC Slots	2 100/1000Base-X SFP interfaces	2 1000Base-X SFP interfaces	
Switch Fabric	12.8Gbps / non-blocking	17.6Gbps / non-blocking	
Switch Throughput@64 bytes	9.5Mpps @64 bytes	13Mpps @64 bytes	
LED	System: Power (Green) SYS (Green) 10/100TX RJ45 Interfaces (Port 1 to Port 24): 100 LNK / ACT (Green) 10 LNK/ACT (Orange) 10/100/1000T RJ45 Interfaces (Port 25 to Port 28): 1000 LNK / ACT (Green) 10/100 LNK/ACT (Orange) 1000 LNK / ACT (Green) 1000 LNK / ACT (Green) 1000 LNK / ACT (Green) 1000 LNK / ACT (Green) 1000 LNK / ACT (Orange)	System: Power (Green) SYS (Green) 10/100TX RJ45 Interfaces (Port 1 to Port 48): 100 LNK / ACT (Green) 10 LNK/ACT (Orange) 10/100/1000T RJ45 Interfaces (Port 49 to Port 50): 1000 LNK / ACT (Green) 10/100 LNK/ACT (Orange) 1000Mbps SFP Interfaces (Port 51 to Port 52): 1000 LNK / ACT (Green)	
Power Requirements	100~240V AC, 50/60Hz, 0.6A	100~240V AC, 50/60Hz, 0.4A	
Power Consumption / Dissipation	Max 12.8 watts / 43 BTU	Max.17.3 watts / 59BTU	
Dimensions (W x D x H)	440 x 180 x 44mm (1U height)	440 x 180 x 44mm (1U height)	
Weight	1.9kg	2.5kg	
Switch Architecture	Store-and-Forward		
MAC Address Table	8K entries		
Flow Control	IEEE 802.3x pause frame for full-duplex Back pressure for half-duplex		
Maximum Transmit Unit	9216bytes		
Reset Button	> 5 sec: Factory default		
Enclosure	Metal		
Layer 2 Functions			
Port Mirroring	TX / RX Many-to-1 monitor		
Port Security	up to 64 MAC Address per port		
Port Isolation	Support		
Loopback Detection	Support		



Link Aggregation	IEEE 802.3ad LACP and static trunk supports 6 groups of 4-port trunk.
VLAN	802.1Q tagged-based VLAN, up to 512 VLAN groups, out of 4094 VLAN IDs Management VLAN
	IEEE 802.1D STP
Spanning Tree Protocol	IEEE 802.1w RSTP
	IEEE 802.1s MSTP
	IGMP (v1/v2/v3) Snooping
Multicast	
	Multicast Filter
Access Control List	L2 / L3 / L4 Access Control List
	4 Priority Queues
	- IEEE 802.1p CoS
	- DSCP / ToS priority
QoS	Strict priority, Weighted Round Robin (WRR) and Equal CoS policies
	Ingress / Egress Rate Limit per port bandwidth control
	Storm Control support:
	- Broadcast / Unknown Unicast / Unknown Multicast
	- Static MAC
	- Dynamic MAC address
Security	- MAC Filtering
	Loop Guard, Root Guard, TC, BPDU Guard, STP BPDU Guard, BPDU
	Filtering,
	DHCP Filtering
Virtual Cable Test	Support
Loopback Test	Support
Management Functions	
	Web browser / Telnet / SNMP v1, v2c, v3 / SSL v2, v3 / SSH v1,v2
Basic Management Interfaces	Firmware upgrade by HTTP protocol through Ethernet network
Soouro Managament Interfaces	Configuration Backup / Restore by HTTP protocol through Ethernet network
	HTTPS, SNMP V3
Web Access Control	IP / MAC / Port-based Web access control
System IP Address Assignment	Static, DHCP and BooTP
System Log	System local log / remote log / backup log
System Time Setting	Manual Setting, Network Time Protocol, PC clock synchronization
Daylight Saving Time	Support
SNMP RMON	RFC 2819 RMON (1, 2, 3, 9)
SNMP Trap	Interface Link Up and Link Down notification
Standards Conformance	



Regulation Compliance	FCC Part 15 Class A, CE	
	IEEE 802.3 10Base-T	
	IEEE 802.3u 100Base-TX / 100Base-FX	
	IEEE 802.3z Gigabit SX/LX	
	IEEE 802.3ab Gigabit 1000Base-T	
	IEEE 802.3x Flow Control and Back pressure	
	IEEE 802.3ad Port Tr	unk with LACP
	IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree protocol	
	IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree protocol	
Standarda Compliance	IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree protocol	
Standards Compliance	IEEE 802.1p Class of Service	
	IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Tagging	
	RFC 768 UDP	
	RFC 791 IP	
	RFC 792 ICMP	
	RFC 2068 HTTP	
	RFC 1112 IGMP version 1	
	RFC 2236 IGMP version 2	
	RFC 3376 IGMP version 3	
Environment		
Operating	Temperature: Relative Humidity:	0 ~ 50 degrees C 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)
Storage	Temperature: Relative Humidity:	-10 ~ 70 degrees C 5 ~ 95% (non-condensing)



# 2. INSTALLATION

This section describes the hardware features and installation of the Managed Switch on the desktop or rack mount. For easier management and control of the Managed Switch, familiarize yourself with its display indicators, and ports. Front panel illustrations in this chapter display the unit LED indicators. Before connecting any network device to the Managed Switch, please read this chapter completely.

# 2.1 Hardware Description

### 2.1.1 Switch Front Panel

The front panel provides a simple interface monitoring the Managed Switch. Figure 2-1-1 & 2-1-2 shows the front panel of the Managed Switch.

### Front Panel



### Figure 2-1-1: FGSW-2840 Front Panel

### Front Panel



### Figure 2-1-2: FGSW-4840S Front Panel

### Fast Ethernet TP Interface

10/100Base-TX Copper, RJ-45 Twist-Pair: Up to 100 meters.

### Gigabit TP Interface

10/100/1000Base-T Copper, RJ-45 Twist-Pair: Up to 100 meters.

### ■ 1000Base-X SFP Slots (FGSW-4840S)

Each of the SFP (Small Form-factor Pluggable) slot supports Dual-speed, 1000Base-SX / LX.

For 1000Base-SX/LX SFP transceiver module: From 550 meters (Multi-mode fiber), up to 10/20/30/40/50/60/70/120 kilometers (Single-mode fiber).

### 100/1000Base-X SFP Slots (FGSW-2840)

Each of the SFP (Small Form-factor Pluggable) slot supports Dual-speed, 1000Base-SX / LX or 100Base-FX.

- For 1000Base-SX/LX SFP transceiver module: From 550 meters (Multi-mode fiber), up to 10/20/30/40/50/60/70/120 kilometers (Single-mode fiber).
- For 100Base-FX SFP transceiver module: From 2 kilometers (Multi-mode fiber), up to 20/40/60 kilometers (Single-mode fiber).



### Reset Button

At front panel of Managed Switch, the reset button is designed for reboot the Managed Switch without turn off and on the power. The following is the summary table of Reset button function:

Reset Button Pressed and Released	Function	
> 5 seconds: Factory Default	Reset the Managed Switch to Factory Default configuration.	
	The Managed Switch will then reboot and load the default	
	settings as below:	
	• Default Username: admin	
	• Default Password: admin	
	• Default IP address: <b>192.168.0.100</b>	
	<ul> <li>Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Default Gateway: 192.168.0.254</li> </ul>	

### 2.1.2 LED Indications

LED Indication

The front panel LEDs indicates instant status of port links, data activity, system power and system CPU status; helps monitor and troubleshoot when needed. Figure 2-1-3 & Figure 2-1-4 shows the LED indications of the Managed Switch.

# Image: Signal production of the structure o

Figure 2-1-3: FGSW-2840 LED Panel

### FGSW-2840 LED Definition

### System

LED	Color	Function
PWR	Green	Lights to indicate that the Switch has power.
SYS	Green	Lights and blinking to indicate the CPU is working.

### > 10/100Base-TX Interfaces (Port 1 to port 24)

LED	Color	Function	
100	Green	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 100Mbps.	
LNK/ACT	Green	Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	
10 LNK/ACT	Orange	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 10Mbps.	
		Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	



### ■ 10/100/1000Base-T Interfaces (Port 25 to port 28)

LED	Color	Function	
1000	Orean	Lights:	To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 1000Mbps.
LNK/ACT	Green	Blink:	To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.
10/100 LNK/ACT	Orange	Lights:	To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 10Mbps or 100Mbps.
		Blink:	To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.

### **1000Base-X SFP Interfaces (Share with Port 27 to port 28)**

LED	Color	Function		
1000	Croon	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 1000Mbps.		
LNK/ACT	Green	Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.		
100	Orange	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 100Mbps.		
LNK/ACT		Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.		

### LED Indication



### Figure 2-1-4: FGSW-4840S LED Panel

### FGSW-4840S LED Definition

### > System

LED	Color	Function	
PWR	Green	Lights to indicate that the Switch has power.	
SYS	Green	<b>.ights</b> and blinking to indicate the CPU is working.	

### > 10/100Base-TX Interfaces (Port 1 to port 48)

LED	Color	Function	
100	Croon	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 100Mbps.	
LNK/ACT	Green	Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	
10	•	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 10Mbps.	
LNK/ACT	Orange	Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	



### 10/100/1000Base-T Interfaces (Port 49 to port 50)

LED	Color	Function	
1000	0	hts: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 1000Mbps.	
LNK/ACT	Green	nk: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	
10/100	Orange	hts: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 10Mbps or 100Mbps.	
LNK/ACT		nk: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	

### 1000Base-X SFP Interfaces (Port 51 to port 52)

LED	Color	Function	
LNK/ACT	Green	Lights: To indicate the link through that port is successfully established at 1000Mbps.	
		Blink: To indicate that the Switch is actively sending or receiving data over that port.	

### 2.1.3 Switch Rear Panel

The rear panel of the Managed Switch indicates an AC inlet power socket, which accepts input power from 100 to 240V AC, 50-60Hz. Figure 2-1-5 & Figure 2-1-6 shows the rear panel of this Managed Switch.

### Rear Panel





### AC Power Receptacle

For compatibility with electric service in most areas of the world, the Managed Switch's power supply automatically adjusts to line power in the range of 100-240V AC and 50/60Hz.

Plug the female end of the power cord firmly into the receptable on the rear panel of the Managed Switch. Plug the other end of the power cord into an electric service outlet and the power will be ready.

**Power Notice:** The device is a power-required device, which means it will not work till it is powered. If your networks should be active all the time, please consider using UPS (Uninterrupted Power Supply) for your device. It will prevent you from network data loss or network downtime.



**Power Notice:** In some areas, installing a surge suppression device may also help to protect your Managed Switch from being damaged by unregulated surge or current to the Managed Switch or the power adapter.

# 2.2 Installing the Switch

This section describes how to install your Managed Switch and make connections to the Managed Switch. Please read the following topics and perform the procedures in the order being presented. To install your Managed Switch on a desktop or shelf, simply complete the following steps.

### 2.2.1 Desktop Installation

To install the Managed Switch on desktop or shelf, please follow these steps:

Step1: Attach the rubber feet to the recessed areas on the bottom of the Managed Switch.Step2: Place the Managed Switch on the desktop or the shelf near an AC power source, as shown in Figure 2-1-7.



Figure 2-1-7: Place the Managed Switch on the desktop

Step3: Keep enough ventilation space between the Managed Switch and the surrounding objects.



When choosing a location, please keep in mind the environmental restrictions discussed in Chapter 1, Section 4, and specifications.

### Step4: Connect the Managed Switch to network devices.

Connect one end of a standard network cable to the RJ-45 ports on the front of the Managed Switch.

Connect the other end of the cable to the network devices such as printer server, workstation or router.



Connection to the Managed Switch requires UTP Category 5 network cabling with RJ-45 tips. For more information, please see the Cabling Specification in Appendix A.



### Step5: Supply power to the Managed Switch.

Connect one end of the power cable to the Managed Switch.

Connect the power plug of the power cable to a standard wall outlet.

When the Managed Switch receives power, the Power LED should remain solid Green.

### 2.2.2 Rack Mounting

To install the Managed Switch in a 19-inch standard rack, please follow the instructions described below.

Step1: Place the Managed Switch on a hard flat surface, with the front panel positioned towards the front side.

Step2: Attach the rack-mount bracket to each side of the Managed Switch with supplied screws attached to the package.

Figure 2-1-8 shows how to attach brackets to one side of the Managed Switch.



Figure 2-1-8: Attach Brackets to the Managed Switch



You must use the screws supplied with the mounting brackets. Damage caused to the parts by using incorrect screws would invalidate the warranty.

Step3: Secure the brackets tightly.

- Step4: Follow the same steps to attach the second bracket to the opposite side.
- Step5: After the brackets are attached to the Managed Switch, use suitable screws to securely attach the brackets to the rack, as shown in Figure 2-1-9.





Figure 2-1-9: Mounting Managed Switch in a Rack

Step6: Proceeds with Steps 4 and 5 of session 2.2.1 Desktop Installation to connect the network cabling and supply power to the Managed Switch.

### 2.2.3 Installing the SFP transceiver

The sections describe how to insert an SFP transceiver into an SFP slot.

The SFP transceivers are hot-pluggable and hot-swappable. You can plug in and out the transceiver to/from any SFP port without having to power down the Managed Switch, as the Figure 2-1-10 shows.



Figure 2-1-10: Plug In the SFP Transceiver



### Approved PLANET SFP Transceivers

PLANET Managed Switch supports both Single mode and Multi-mode SFP transceiver. The following list of approved PLANET SFP transceivers is correct at the time of publication:

### Gigabit SFP Transceiver Modules (FGSW-2840 / FGSW-4840S)

- MGB-GT SFP-Port 1000Base-T Module
- MGB-SX SFP-Port 1000Base-SX mini-GBIC module
- MGB-LX SFP-Port 1000Base-LX mini-GBIC module -10KM
- MGB-L30 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX mini-GBIC module -30KM
- MGB-L50 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX mini-GBIC module -50KM
- MGB-L70 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX mini-GBIC module -70KM
- MGB-L120 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX mini-GBIC module -120KM
- MGB-LA10 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX (WDM,TX:1310nm) -10KM
- MGB-LB10 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX (WDM,TX:1550nm) -10KM
- MGB-LA20 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX (WDM,TX:1310nm) -20KM
- MGB-LB20 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX (WDM,TX:1550nm) -20KM
- MGB-LA40 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX (WDM,TX:1310nm) -40KM
- MGB-LB40 SFP-Port 1000Base-LX (WDM,TX:1550nm) -40KM

### Fast Ethernet SFP Transceiver Modules (FGSW-2840 only)

- MFB-FX SFP-Port 100Base-FX Transceiver -2KM
- MFB-F20 SFP-Port 100Base-FX Transceiver -20KM
- MFB-F40 SFP-Port 100Base-FX Transceiver -40KM
- MFB-F60 SFP-Port 100Base-FX Transceiver -60KM
- MFB-FA20 SFP-Port 100Base-BX Transceiver (WDM,TX:1310nm) -20KM
- MFB-FB20 SFP-Port 100Base-BX Transceiver (WDM,TX:1550nm) -20KM



It is recommended to use PLANET SFP on the Managed Switch. If you insert an SFP transceiver that is not supported, the Managed Switch will not recognize it.



In the installation steps below, this Manual uses Gigabit SFP transceiver as an example. However, the steps for Fast Ethernet SFP transceiver are similar.

- Before we connect Managed Switch to the other network device, we have to make sure both sides of the SFP transceivers are with the same media type, for example: 1000Base-SX to 1000Base-SX, 1000Base-LX to 1000Base-LX.
- 2. Check whether the fiber-optic cable type matches with the SFP transceiver requirement.
  - To connect to 1000Base-SX SFP transceiver, please use the multi-mode fiber cable with one side being the male duplex LC connector type.
  - > To connect to 1000Base-LX SFP transceiver, please use the single-mode fiber cable with one side being the male



duplex LC connector type.

### ■ Connect the Fiber Cable

- 1. Insert the duplex LC connector into the SFP transceiver.
- 2. Connect the other end of the cable to a device with SFP transceiver installed.
- 3. Check the LNK/ACT LED of the SFP slot on the front of the Managed Switch. Ensure that the SFP transceiver is operating correctly.
- 4. Check the Link mode of the SFP port if the link fails. To function with some fiber-NICs or Media Converters, user has to set the port Link mode to "1000 Force" or "100 Force".

### Remove the Transceiver Module

- 1. Make sure there is no network activity anymore.
- 2. Remove the Fiber-Optic Cable gently.
- 3. Lift up the lever of the MGB module and turn it to a horizontal position.
- 4. Pull out the module gently through the lever.



Figure 2-1-11: How to Pull Out the SFP Transceiver



Never pull out the module without lifting up the lever of the module and turning it to a horizontal position. Directly pulling out the module could damage the module and the SFP module slot of the Managed Switch.



# **3. SWITCH MANAGEMENT**

This chapter explains the methods that you can use to configure management access to the Managed Switch. It describes the types of management applications and the communication and management protocols that deliver data between your management device (workstation or personal computer) and the system. It also contains information about port connection options.

### This chapter covers the following topics:

- Requirements
- Management Access Overview
- Web Management Access
- SNMP Access

## **3.1 Requirements**

- Workstations running Windows 2000/XP, 2003, Vista/7/8, 2008, MAC OS9 or later, Linux, UNIX or other platforms are compatible with TCP/IP protocols.
- Workstation is installed with Ethernet NIC (Network Interface Card)
- Ethernet Port connection
  - Network cables -- Use standard network (UTP) cables with RJ45 connectors.
- The above Workstation is installed with **WEB Browser** and **JAVA runtime environment** Plug-in



It is recommended to use Internet Explore 8.0 or above to access the Managed Switch. If the Web interface of the Managed Switch is not accessible, please turn off the anti-virus software or firewall and then try it again.



# 3.2 Management Access Overview

The Managed Switch gives you the flexibility to access and manage it using any or all of the following methods:

- Web browser interface
- An external SNMP-based network management application

The administration Web browser interface supports are embedded in the Managed Switch software and are available for immediate use. Each of these management methods has their own advantages. Table 3-1 compares the three management methods.

Method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Web Browser	Ideal for configuring the switch remotely	Security can be compromised (hackers need
	Compatible with all popular browsers	only know the IP address and subnet mask)
	Can be accessed from any location	May encounter lag times on poor connections
	Most visually appealing	
SNMP Agent	Communicates with switch functions at	Requires SNMP manager software
	the MIB level	Least visually appealing of all three methods
	Based on open standards	Some settings require calculations
		Security can be compromised (hackers need
		only know the community name)

Table 3-1: Comparison of Management Methods

# 3.3 Web Management

The Managed Switch offers management features that allow users to manage the Managed Switch from anywhere on the network through a standard browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer. After you set up your IP address for the Managed Switch, you can access the Managed Switch's Web interface applications directly in your Web browser by entering the IP address of the Managed Switch.





You can then use your Web browser to list and manage the Managed Switch configuration parameters from one central location; Web Management requires Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0 or later, Google Chrome, Safari or Mozilla Firefox 1.5 or later.



m.
Note

The following web screen based on FGSW-4840S, for FGSW-2840 the display will be the same to FGSW-4840S.

Hetworking & Communication	
FGSW-4840S	System Summary Device Description System Time Daylight Saving Time System IP
System • System Information • User Management • System Tools	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
<ul> <li>Access Security</li> </ul>	System Information System Description: 49 Port 10/100TV + 2 Port Graphit + 2 Port 1000V SEP Managed Switch
	System Description. 46-Fort Tortox A 2-Fort Sigabil + 2-Fort Tobox SFF Managed Switch
Propring Tree	Device Longing
Multicoct	System Contact
	Hardware Version' EGSW-4840S 3.0
400 ACI	Firmware Version: 1.0.0 Fluid 20140729 Rel 60234
SNMP	IP Address: 192168.0.100
Maintenance	Subnet Mask: 256.256.26.0
Save Config	Default Gateway. 192.168.0.254
	MAC Address: 00-30-4F-B4-3B-83
Logout	System Time: 2006-01-01 08:03:01
	Run Time: 0 day - 0 hour - 3 min - 15 sec
Copyright© 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.	Refresh Help

Figure 3-2: Web Main Screen of Managed Switch

# 3.4 SNMP-Based Network Management

You can use an external SNMP-based application to configure and manage the Managed Switch, such as SNMPc Network Manager, HP Openview Network Node Management (NNM) or What's Up Gold. This management method requires the SNMP agent on the switch and the SNMP Network Management Station to use the **same community string**. This management method, in fact, uses two community strings: the **get community** string and the **set community** string. If the SNMP Network management Station only knows the set community string, it can read and write to the MIBs. However, if it only knows the get community string, it can only read MIBs. The default gets and sets community strings for the Managed Switch are public.



Figure 3-3: SNMP Management



# **4. WEB CONFIGURATION**

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the Web-based management.

### **About Web-based Management**

The Managed Switch offers management features that allow users to manage the Managed Switch from anywhere on the network through a standard browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer.

The Web-based Management supports Internet Explorer 8.0. It is based on Java Applets with an aim to reduce network bandwidth consumption, enhance access speed and present an easy viewing screen.



By default, IE8.0 or later version does not allow Java Applets to open sockets. The user has to explicitly modify the browser setting to enable Java Applets to use network ports.



The following web screen based on FGSW-4840S, for FGSW-2840 the display will be the same to FGSW-4840S.

The Managed Switch can be configured through an Ethernet connection, making sure the manager PC must be set on the same IP subnet address as the Managed Switch.

For example, the default IP address of the Managed Switch is **192.168.0.100**, then the manager PC should be set at **192.168.0.x** (where x is a number between 1 and 254, except 100), and the default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0. If you have changed the default IP address of the Managed Switch to 192.168.1.1 with subnet mask 255.255.255.0 via web, then the manager PC should be set at 192.168.1.x (where x is a number between 2 and 254) to do the relative configuration on manager PC.





### Logging on the Managed Switch

1. Use Internet Explorer 8.0 or above Web browser. Enter the factory-default IP address to access the Web interface. The factory-default IP Address as following:



### http://192.168.0.100

2. When the following login screen appears, please enter the default username **"admin"** with password **"admin"** to login the main screen of Managed Switch. The login screen in Figure 4-1-2 appears.

PLANET Networking & Communication	1	
User Name: Password: Login	Clear	
Copyright © 2014 PLANE All right	T Technology s reserved	Corporation.

Figure 4-1-2: Login Screen

Default User name: admin

Default Password: admin

After entering the username and password, the main screen appears as Figure 4-1-3.

PLANET Networking & Communication	
FGSW-4840S	System Summary Device Description System Time Daylight Saving Time System IP
System • System Information • User Management • System Tools • Access Security	$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 6 & 8 & 10 & 12 & 14 & 16 & 18 & 20 & 22 & 24 & 26 & 28 & 30 & 32 & 34 & 36 & 38 & 40 & 42 & 44 & 46 & 48 & 50 \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1$
Switching	System Description: 48-Port 10/100TX + 2-Port Sigabit + 2-Port 1000X SFP Managed Switch
VLAN	Device Name: FGSW-48405
Spanning Tree	Device Location:
Multicast	System Contact
QoS	Hardware Version: FGSW-4840S 3.0
ACL	Firmware Version: 1.0.0 Build 20140729 Rel.60234
SNMP	IP Address: 192.168.0.100
Maintenance	Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Save Config	Default Gateway: 192.168.0.254
te de la companya de	MAC Address: 00-30-4F-B4-3B-83
Logout	System Time: 2006-01-01 08:03:01
	Run Time: 0 day - 0 hour - 3 min - 15 sec
	Refresh Help
Copyright©2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.	

Figure 4-1-3: Web Main Screen of Managed Switch



Now, you can use the Web management interface to continue the switch management or manage the Managed Switch by Web interface. The Switch Menu on the left of the web page let you access all the commands and statistics the Managed Switch provides.



It is recommended to use Internet Explore 8.0 or above to access Managed Switch.

The changed IP address takes effect immediately after clicking on the **Apply** button. You need to use the new IP address to access the Web interface.



For security reason, please change and memorize the new password after this first setup.

Only accept command in lowercase letter under web interface.



# 4.1 Main Web Page

The Managed Switch provides a Web-based browser interface for configuring and managing it. This interface allows you to access the Managed Switch using the Web browser of your choice. This chapter describes how to use the Managed Switch's Web browser interface to configure and manage it.

Main Functions Me	enu Main S	creen C	opper Port	Link Status		SFP Port	Link Status
FGSW-4840S	System Summary Device D	scription System 1	ime Dayligh Sa	ring Time System IP			
System  System Information User Management		$\begin{bmatrix} 12 & 14 & 16 & 18 \\ \hline 1 & \hline 1 & \hline 1 & \hline 1 \\ \hline 1 & \hline 1 & 13 & 15 & 17 \\ \hline 1 & 13 & 15 & 17 \\ \end{bmatrix}$	20 22 24 26 21 21 23 25 19 21 23 25	28 30 32 34 36 38 <b>1 1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1</b> <b>1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 </b>	40 42 44 46 48 40 42 44 46 48 40 42 44 46 48 41 43 45 47	50 51 49	1 <sup>52</sup>
• System Tools	Evetom Information						
<ul> <li>Access Security</li> <li>Outlobing</li> </ul>	System Monthation	49-Port 10/100TV +	2-Port Gigshit + 2-Po	t 1000V GEP Managed Switch			
	Device Name:	FGSIAL4840S	er on organit - 2-r o	it room of r managed ownen			
Spapping Tree	Device Location:	10000 40400					
Multicaet	System Contact						
	Hardware Version:	EGSIA/-4840S 3.0					
ACL	Firmware Version:	1.0.0 Build 2014072	9 Rel 60234				
	IP Address:	192 168 0 100					
Maintenance	Subnet Mask	255 255 255 0					
Save Config	Default Gateway	192 168 0 254					
	MAC Address:	00-30-4F-B4-3B-83					
Logout	System Time:	2006-01-01 08:03:0					
	Run Time:	0 day - 0 hour - 3 mi	n - 15 sec				
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.		Refresh	Help				

Figure 4-1-4: Web Main Page

### **Panel Display**

The web agent displays an image of the Managed Switch's ports. The Mode can be set to display different information for the ports, including Link up or Link down. Clicking on the image of a port opens the **Port Status** page.

The port states are illustrated as follows:





### Main Menu

Using the onboard web agent, you can define system parameters, manage and control the Managed Switch and all its ports, or monitor network conditions. Via the Web-Management, the administrator can set up the Managed Switch by selecting the functions listed in the Main Function. The screen in Figure 4-1-5 appears.

PLANET Networkleg & Communication
FGSW-4840S
14 - 14
System
<ul> <li>System Information</li> </ul>
• User Management
• System Tools
<ul> <li>Access Security</li> </ul>
Switching
Spanning Tree
Multicast
QoS
ACL
SNMP
Maintenance
Save Config
Logout
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.

Figure 4-1-5: Managed Switch Main Functions Menu



# 4.2 System

Use the System menu items to display and configure basic administrative details of the Managed Switch. Under System, the following topics are provided to configure and view the system information. This section has the following items:

- **System Information** The switch system information is provided here.
- User Management Configure the switch management interface access authority on this page.
- System Tools The system tools provided here to configure related options.
- Access Security Configure system access security function on this page.

### 4.2.1 System Information

The System Info page provides basic properties configuration that can be implemented on **System Summary**, **Device Description**, **System Time**, **Daylight Saving Time** and **System IP** pages. The screen in Figure 4-2-1 appears.



Figure 4-2-1: System Information Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
System Summary	View the port connection status and the system information on this page.
Device Description	Configure the description of the switch, including device name, device location and system contact on this page.
System Time	Configure the system time and the settings here will be used for other time-based functions on this page.
Daylight Saving Time	Configure the Daylight Saving Time of the switch on this page.
System IP	Configure the system IP of the switch on this page.





### 4.2.1.1 System Summary

The port status diagram shows the working status of 10/100Mbps RJ45 ports, 10/100/1000Mbps RJ45 ports and 2 SFP ports of the Managed Switch, the System Summary includes the Managed Switch system information and the screen in Figure 4-2-2 appears.

System Summary Device De	scription System Time Daylight Saving Time System IP
	12 14 16 18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46 48 50
1 3 5 7 9	11 13 15 17 19 21 23 25 27 29 31 33 35 37 39 41 43 45 47 49
System Information	
System Description:	48-Port 10/100TX + 2-Port Gigabit + 2-Port 1000X SFP Managed Switch
Device Name:	FGSW-4840S
Device Location:	
System Contact:	
Hardware Version:	FGSW-4840S 3.0
Firmware Version:	1.0.0 Build 20140729 Rel.60234
IP Address:	192.168.0.100
Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway:	192.168.0.254
MAC Address:	00-30-4F-B4-3B-83
System Time:	2006-01-01 08:03:01
Run Time:	0 day - 0 hour - 3 min - 15 sec
	Refresh Help

Figure 4-2-2: System Summary Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
System Description	Displays the current system description information.
Device Name	Displays the current system name information.
Device Location	Displays the current device location information.
System Contact	Displays the current system contact information.
Hardware Version	Displays the current hardware version information.
Firmware Version	Displays the current firmware version information.
IP Address	Displays the current IP address information.
Subnet Mask	Displays the current IP subnet mask address information.
Default Gateway	Displays the current IP default gateway information.
MAC Address	Displays the current MAC address information.
System Time	Displays the current system time information.
Run Time	Displays the current system operation time information.

### Buttons

Refresh : Click to refresh the current web page.

Help : Click to display the help web page.



### 4.2.1.2 Device Description

This page allows configuring the description of the Managed Switch, including device name, device location and system contact. After setup is completed, please press "**Apply**" button to take effect, and the screen in Figure 4-2-3 appears.

system Summary	Device Description	System Time	Daylight Saving Time	System IP
Device Descripti	on			
Device Nam	e: FGSW-	4840S		
Device Loca	ition:			Apply
System Con	itact:			
Note:				
The Device Name	e, Location and Conta	ct should be less th	an 32 characters.	

Figure 4-2-3: Device Description Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Device Name	The name identifying the Managed Switch.	
	Maximum length: 32 characters.	
Device Location	The device location information of the Managed Switch.	
	Maximum length: <b>32</b> characters.	
System Contact	The system contact information of the Managed Switch.	
	Maximum length: <b>32</b> characters.	

### Button

Apply : Click to apply changes.


# 4.2.1.3 System Time

This page allows configuring system time and the settings here will be used for other time-based functions. After setup is completed, please press "**Apply**" button to take effect, and the screen in Figure 4-2-4 appears.

Time Information						
Current Syste	m Date: 2006-(	1-01 10:59:51	Sunday			
Current Time	Source: Manu	al				
Time Config						
O Manual						
Date:		2006 🖌 01	v 01 v			
Time:		10 🗸 59	v 51 v			
💽 Get Time t	rom NTP Serve	er				Analy
Time Zon	e:	(UTC+08:00) Be	jing, Chongqing,	Hong Kong, U	umqi, Singapore	Apply Refresh
Primary S	ever:	133.100.9.2				Holp
Secondar	y Sever:	139.78.100.163				
Update R	ate:	12	hour(s)			
O Supebrani	with PC's Cl	ack	10 2020			

Figure 4-2-4: System Time Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Time Information	Current System Date:
	Displays the current date and time of the Managed Switch.
	Current Time Source:
	Displays the current time source of the Managed Switch.
Time Config	To set time from the following methods.
	• Manual - When this option is selected, you can set the date and time manually.
	• Get Time from NTP Server - When this option is selected, you can configure
	the time zone and the IP Address for the NTP Server. The Managed Switch will
	get time automatically if it is connected to a NTP Server.
	• <b>Time Zone:</b> Select your local time.
	• <b>Primary/Secondary NTP Server:</b> Enter the IP Address for the NTP Server.
	• <b>Update Rate:</b> Specify the rate of fetching time from NTP server.
	• Synchronize with PC Clock - When this option is selected, the administrator
	PC clock is utilized.





The system time will be restored to the default when the Managed Switch is restarted and you need to reconfigure the system of the Managed Switch.

When Get Time from NTP Server is selected and no time server is configured, the Managed Switch will get time from the time server of the Internet if it has connected to the Internet.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes. Refresh: Click to refresh current web page. Help : Click to display help web page.

# 4.2.1.4 Daylight Saving Time

The Daylight Saving Time Configuration screenin Figure 4-2-5 appears.

System Summary	Device Description	System Time	Daylight Saving Time	System IP
DST Config				
DST Status:	Disable 🗸			
Predefine	ed Mode			
USA		Australia	Europe	New Zealand
Recurring	g Mode			
Offset:	60	(mi	nutes)	
Start Time	e: Week	Last 🗸 D	ay Sun. 👻 Month Ma	ar. 💙 01:00
End Time	e: Week	Last 🗸 🗸 D	ay Sun. 🔽 Month Oc	t. 💉 01:00
🔘 Date Moo	le			
Offset:	60	(mi	nutes)	
Start Time	e: Apr.	v 01 v	00:00 (MM/DD HH:	:MM)
End Time	: Oct.	v 01 v	00:00 (MM/DD HH:	:MM)
		Apply	Help	

Figure 4-2-5: Daylight Saving Time Page Screenshot

Object	Description
DST Status	Enable or disable the DST.
Predefined Mode	Select a predefined DST configuration.
	• USA: Second Sunday in March, 02:00 ~ First Sunday in November, 02:00.
	• Australia: First Sunday in October, 02:00 ~ First Sunday in April, 03:00.



	• Europe: Last Sunday in March, 01:00 ~ Last Sunday in October, 01:00.
	• New Zealand: Last Sunday in September, 02:00 ~ First Sunday in April, 03:00.
Recurring Mode	Specify the DST configuration in recurring mode. This configuration is recurring in use.
	<ul> <li>Offset: Specify the time adding in minutes when Daylight Saving Time comes.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Start/End Time: Select starting time and ending time of Daylight Saving Time.</li> </ul>
Date Mode	Specify the DST configuration in Date mode. This configuration is recurring in use.
	<ul> <li>Offset: Specify the time adding in minutes when Daylight Saving Time comes.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Start/End Time: Select starting time and ending time of Daylight Saving Time.</li> </ul>

#### Buttons

Apply	: Click to apply changes.
Help	: Click to display help web page.

## 4.2.1.5 System IP

This page provides three modes to obtain an IP address: Static IP, DHCP and BOOTP. The IP address obtained using a new mode will replace the original IP address. On this page you can configure the system IP of the Managed Switch. After setup is completed, please press "**Apply**" button to take effect, and the screen in Figure 4-2-6 appears.

IP Config					
MAC Address	c	00-30-4F-	B4-3B-83		
IP Address M	ode:	Static		ООТР	
Management	VLAN:	1	(VLAN ID: 1-4094)	)	
IP Address:		192.168.0	0.100		Apply
Subnet Mask		255.255.2	255.0		Help
Default Gatev	vay:	192.168.0	0.254		

Figure 4-2-6: System IP Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
MAC Address	Displays MAC Address of the Managed Switch.
IP Address Mode	Select the mode to obtain IP Address for the Managed Switch.
	• Static IP: When this option is selected, you should enter IP Address, Subnet Mask and Default Gateway manually.
	• DHCP: When this option is selected, the Managed Switch will obtain network parameters from the DHCP Server.
	• <b>BOOTP</b> : When this option is selected, the Managed Switch will obtain network parameters from the BOOTP Server.
Management VLAN	Enter the ID of management VLAN, the only VLAN through which you can get access to
	the Managed Switch. By default VLAN1 owning all the ports is the Management VLAN and
	you can access the Managed Switch via any port on the Managed Switch. However, if
	another VLAN is created and set to be the Management VLAN, you may have to reconnect
	the management station to a port that is a member of the Management VLAN.
IP Address	Enter the system IP of the Managed Switch. The default system IP is <b>192.168.0.100</b> .
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the Managed Switch.
	The default subnet mask is <b>255.255.255.0</b> .
Gateway	Enter the default gateway of the Managed Switch.
	The default gateway is <b>192.168.0.254</b> .





If the Managed Switch gets the IP address from DHCP server, you can see the configuration of the Managed Switch in the DHCP server; if DHCP option is selected but no DHCP server exists in the network, a few minutes later, the Managed Switch will restore the setting to the default.

If DHCP or BOOTP option is selected, the Managed Switch will get network parameters dynamically from the Internet, which means that its IP address, subnet mask and default gateway cannot be configured.

## Buttons

Apply

Help

: Click to apply changes.

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.2.2 User Management

The User Management functions to configure the user name and password for users to log on to the Web management page with a certain access level so as to protect the settings of the Managed Switch from being randomly changed; the screen in Figure 4-2-7 appears.

PLANET Retworking & Communication					
FGSW-4840S	User Table Use	er Config			
	User Table		l'	1	
System	User ID	User Name	Access Level	Status	
<ul> <li>System Information</li> </ul>	1	admin	Admin	Enable	
User Management		(	Refresh		
System Loois					
Access Security     Switching					
VI AN					
Spanning Tree					
Multicast					
QoS					
ACL					
SNMP					
Maintenance					
Save Config					
Logout					
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology					
Corporation. All rights					
reserved.					

## Figure 4-2-7: User Management Page Screenshot

Object	Description
User Table	View the information about the current users of the Managed Switch on this
	page.
User Config	Configure the access level of the user to log on to the Web management page on
	this page.



## 4.2.2.1 User Table

This page provides view the information about the current users of the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-2-8 appears.

ser rable	User Config		
User Table			
User ID	User Name	Access Level	Status
1	admin	Admin	Enable



## 4.2.2.2 User Config

This page allows configuring the access level of the user to log on to the Web management page of Managed Switch. The Managed Switch provides two access levels: Guest and Admin.

Object	Description
Guest	The guest only can view the settings without the right to configure the Managed Switch.
Admin	The admin can configure all the functions of the Managed Switch.

The Web management pages contained in this guide are subject to the admin's login without any explanation; the screen in Figure 4-2-9 appears.

User Infor	mation				
User N	Name:				
Acces	s Level:	Guest 🔻			
User S	Status:	🖲 Enable 🔍 Disa	ble		Create
Passv	vord:				Clear
Confir	m Password:				
Passv	vord Display Mo	de: Simple ▼			
User Table	9				
Select	User ID	User Name	Access Level	Status	Operation
	1	admin	Admin	Enable	Edit
		Delete	Help		

Figure 4-2-9: User Config Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
User Information	
User Name	Create a name for users' login.
Access Level	Select the access level to login.
	<ul> <li>Admin: allow edit, modify and view all the settings of different functions.</li> <li>Guest: only can view the settings without the right to edit and modify.</li> </ul>
User Status	Select Enable/Disable the user configuration.
Password	Type a password for users' login.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.
Password Display Mode	Select password display mode.
	• Simple: displays the password in plain text in configure file.
	• Cipher: displays the password in cipher text in configure file.
User Table	
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding user information. It is
	multi-optional The current user information can't be deleted.
User ID	Displays the current user ID, user name, access level and user status.
User Name	Displays the user name.
Access Level	Displays the access level information.
Status	Displays the current user config status.
Operation	Click the Edit button of the desired entry, and edit the corresponding user
	information. After modifying the settings, please click the <b>Modify</b> button to make
	the modification effective. Access level and user status of the current user
	information can't be modified

### Buttons

Create : Click to add a new user.

Clear : Click to clear the current input information.

Delete

Click to delete the current user.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.2.3 System Tools

The System Tools function, allowing to manage the configuration file of the Managed Switch, can be implemented on the **Config Restore**, **Config Backup**, **Firmware Upgrade**, **System Reboot** and **System Reset** pages; the screen in Figure 4-2-10 appears.



Figure 4-2-10: System Tools Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Configure Restore	Allows uploading a backup configuration file to restore Managed Switch to the
	previous configuration.
Configure Backup	Allows downloading the current configuration and saving it as a file to your
	computer for future configuration restore.
Firmware Upgrade	Provides firmware upgrade function of Managed Switch.
System Reboot	Provides system reboot function of Managed Switch.
System Reset	Provides system reset to default function of Managed Switch.



## 4.2.3.1 Config Restore

This page provides uploading a backup configuration file to restore Managed Switch to the previous configuration; the screen in

Figure 4-2-11 appears.

Config Restore         Restore the config from the saved config file         Select a backup config file and click the Restore Config button, and then you can restore to the previous config.         Config File:       Browse         Restore Config       Help
Config Restore         Restore the config from the saved config file         Select a backup config file and click the Restore Config button, and then you can restore to the previous config.         Config File:       Browse         Restore Config       Help
Restore the config from the saved config file         Select a backup config file and click the Restore Config button, and then you can restore to the previous config.         Config File:       Browse         Restore Config       Help
Select a backup config file and click the Restore Config button, and then you can restore to the previous config. Config File: Restore Config Help Note:
previous config. Config File: Restore Config Help Note:
previous config. Config File: Restore Config Help Note:
Config File: Browse Restore Config Help Note:
Restore Config Help
Restore Config Help
Note:
Note:
It will take a long time to restore the config file. Please wait without any operation.



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Restore Config	Click the Restore Config button to restore the backup configuration file. It will
	take effect after the Managed Switch automatically reboots.

#### Button

Help

: Click to display help web page.

It will take a few minutes to restore the configuration. Please wait without any operation.



After being restored, the current settings of the Managed Switch will be lost. Wrong uploaded configuration file may cause the Managed Switch to unmanage.



# 4.2.3.2 Config Backup

This page provides downloading the current configuration and saving it as a file to your computer for future configuration restore; the screen in Figure 4-2-12 appears.

onfig Restore	Config Backup	Firmware Upgrade	System Reboot	System Reset
Config Backu	p			
Backup	System Config			
Click the	button Backup Cor	nfig, and you can save t	he config to your con	nputer.
		Backup Config	Help	

Figure 4-2-12: Config Backup Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Config Backup	Click the Backup Config button to save the current configuration as a file to your
	computer. You are suggested to take this measure before upgrading.

## Button

Help : Click to display help web page.



It will take a few minutes to back up the configuration. Please wait without any operation.



# 4.2.3.3 Firmware Upgrade

This page provides firmware upgrade function of Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-2-13 appears.

onfig Restore	Config Backup	Firmware Upgrade	System Reboot	System Reset	
Firmware Upg	rade				
You will g	get the new function	after upgrading the firm	iware.		
Firmware	File:		Browse	(	Upgrade
Firmware	Version: 1.0.0 Buil	d 20140729 Rel.60234		(	Help
Hardware	e Version: FGSW-48	340S 3.0			
Note:					
1. Please selec	ct the proper softwa	re version matching with	h your hardware to u	ograde.	
2. To avoid dat	mage, please don't	turn off the device while	upgrading.		
3. Aπer upgrad	ling, the device will	reboot automatically.			
<ol><li>You are sug</li></ol>	gested to backup th	ιe configuration before ι	upgrading.		

## Figure 4-2-13: Firmware Upgrade Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Upgrade	Click the <b>Upgrade</b> button to start firmware upgrade process.

## Button

Help: : Click to display help web page.

		Please don't interrupt the upgrade.
		Please select the proper_software version matching with your hardware_to upgrade.
<b>E</b>	To avoid damage, please don't power off the Managed Switch while upgrading.	
Note	•	After upgrading, the Managed Switch will reboot automatically.
	Please back up the current configuration before starting the firmware upgrade process.	



# 4.2.3.4 System Reboot

This page provides system reboot function of Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-2-14 appears.

nfig Restore	Config Backup	Firmware Upgrade	System Reboot	System Reset	
System Rebo	oot				
Save Cor	nfig:				
Reboot:		Reboot			

#### Figure 4-2-14: System Reboot Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Save Config	Choose to save the current config of Managed Switch.
Reboot	Click the <b>Upgrade</b> button to start the reboot process.



To avoid damage, please don't power off the Managed Switch while rebooting.



# 4.2.3.5 System Reset

This page provide resetting the Managed Switch to the default and all the settings will be cleared after the Managed Switch is reset; the screen in Figure 4-2-15 appears.

Config Restore	Config Backup	Firmware Upgrade	System Reboot	System Reset
System Rese	t			
Reset:	C	Reset		
Note:				
The System R	eset option will rest	ore the configuration to	default and the curre	nt configuration will be lost.

#### Figure 4-2-15: System Reset Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Reset	Click the <b>Reset</b> button to start the system factory default process.



After the Managed Switch is reset, the Managed Switch will be reset to the default and all the settings will be cleared.



# 4.2.4 Access Security

Access Security provides different security measures for the remote login so as to enhance the configuration management security. It can be implemented on the **Access Control**, **SSL Config** and **SSH Config** pages; the screen in Figure 4-2-16 appears.

PLANET Networking & Communication								
FGSW-4840S	Access Control SSL	Config SSH	Config					
	Access Control Config							1
System	Control Mode:	Disab	le 🔻					
<ul> <li>System Information</li> </ul>	IP Address				Mask:			
<ul> <li>User Management</li> </ul>	MAG ALL			_	vidor.			
<ul> <li>System Tools</li> </ul>	MAC Address:							
<ul> <li>Access Security</li> </ul>	Port:							
Switching	1 2	🔲 3	4	<b>5</b>	6	7	8	
VLAN	9 1	0 🗌 11	12	13	14	15	16	
Spanning Tree	17 1	8 🗌 19	20	21	22	23	24	
	25 25	6 🛛 27	28	29	20	2 31	32	
	33 33	4 🔲 35	36	37	38	39	<b>4</b> 0	
	41 4	2 🛛 🗐 43	44	45	46	47	48	
Maintonanco	<b>4</b> 9 <b>5</b>	0 51	52					
Save Config	Consister Consta							i.
	Session Config	1	_					
Logout	Session Timeout:	10	min (5-30	))				
	Access User Number							£.
	Number Control:	O Er	nable 🖲 Di:	sable				
	Admin Number		(1-16)					
			(1.10)					
	Guest Number:		(0-15)					
			Apply	Help				
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.								-

Figure 4-2-16: Access Security Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Access Control	Allows controlling the users logging on to the Web management page to enhance
	the configuration management security of Managed Switch.
SSL Config	Allows downloading the current configuration and saving it as a file to your
	computer for future configuration restore.
SSH Config	Provides firmware upgrade function of Managed Switch.



## 4.2.4.1 Access Control

This page provides controlling the users logging on to the Web management page to enhance the configuration management security. The definitions of Admin and Guest can be referred to Chapter 4.2.2 under User Management; the screen in Figure 4-2-17 appears.

Acces	s Control	SSL Confi	g SSH (	Config					
Ac	ccess Contro	ol Config							
	Control M	ode:	Disabl	e 🔻					
	IP Addres	S:		Mask:					
	MAC Add	lress:							
	Deste								
	Port:								
	<u> </u>	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
	9	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	- 12	13	14	<u> </u>	· 16	
	· 17	- 18	· 19	20	21	22	23	24	
	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	
	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	
	- 41	42	43	44	- 45	46	47	48	
	49	50	51	52					
Se	ession Config	g							
	Session T	Timeout:	10	min (5-30	)				
					,				
Ac	ccess User i	Number							
	Number Control:		🔾 En	able 💿 Dis	able				
	Admin Number:			(1-16)					
	Guest Number:			(0-15)					
	54551 144					_			
				Apply	Help				

Figure 4-2-17: Access Control Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Access Control Config	
Control Mode	Select the control mode for users to log on to the Web management page.
	• <b>Disable</b> : Disable the access control function.
	• IP-based: Select this option to limit the IP-range of the users for login.
	• <b>MAC-based:</b> Select this option to limit the MAC address of the users for login.
	• <b>Port-based:</b> Select this option to limit the ports for login.



IP Address & MASK	These fields can be available for configuration only when IP-based mode is
	selected. Only the users within the IP-range you set here are allowed for login.
MAC Address	The field can be available for configuration only when MAC-based mode is
	selected. Only the users with this MAC Address you set here are allowed for login.
Port	The field can be available for configuration only when Port-based mode is selected.
	Only the users connected to these ports you set here are allowed for login.
Session Config	
Session Timeout	If you do nothing with the Web management page within the timeout time, the
	system will log out automatically. If you want to reconfigure, please login again.
Access User Number	
Number Control	Select Enable/Disable the Number Control function.
Admin Number	Enter the maximum number of the users logging on to the Web management page
	as Admin.
Guest Number	Enter the maximum number of the users logging on to the Web management page
	as Guest.

## Buttons

Apply

Help

: Click to apply changes.

: Click to display help web page.



## 4.2.4.2 SSL Config

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer), a security protocol, is to provide a secure connection for the application layer protocol (e.g. HTTP) communication based on TCP. SSL is widely used to secure the data transmission between the Web browser and servers. It is mainly applied through ecommerce and online banking.

SSL mainly provides the following services:

- 1. Authenticate the users and the servers based on the certificates to ensure the data are transmitted to the correct users and servers;
- 2. Encrypt the data transmission to prevent the data being intercepted;
- 3. Maintain the integrality of the data to prevent the data being altered in the transmission.

Adopting asymmetrical encryption technology, SSL uses key pair to encrypt/decrypt information. A key pair refers to a public key (contained in the certificate) and its corresponding private key. By default the Managed Switch has a certificate (self-signed certificate) and a corresponding private key. The Certificate/Key Download function enables the user to replace the default key pair. After SSL is effective, you can log on to the Web management page via <a href="https://192.168.0.100">https://192.168.0.100</a>. For the first time you use HTTPS connection to log into the Managed Switch with the default certificate. You will be prompted that "The security certificate presented by this website was not issued by a trusted certificate authority" or "Certificate Errors". Please add this certificate to trusted certificates or continue to this website. The screen in Figure 4-2-18 appears.

Access Control	SSL Config	SSH Config		
Global Config				
SSL:		Enable O Disable		Apply Help
Certificate Do	wnload			
Certificate	e File:		Browse	Download
Key Download	ł			
Key File:			Browse	Download
Note: 1.The SSL certificate and key downloaded will not take effect until the switch is rebooted. 2.The SSL certificate and key downloaded must match each other; otherwise the HTTPS connection will not work.				

Figure 4-2-18: SSL Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description		
Global Config			
• SSL	Select Enable/Disable the SSL function on the Managed Switch.		
Certification Download			
Certification File	Select the desired certificate to download to the Managed Switch. The certificate		
	must be BASE64 encoded.		
Key Download			
Key File	Select the desired SSL key to download to the Managed Switch. The key must be		
	BASE64 encoded.		

#### Buttons



: Click to display help web page.

Download

Help

Click to download the files.





## 4.2.4.3 SSH Config

As stipulated by IFTF (Internet Engineering Task Force), SSH (Secure Shell) is a security protocol established on application and transport layers. SSH-encrypted-connection is similar to a Telnet connection, but essentially the old Telnet remote management method is not safe, because the password and data transmitted with plain text can be easily intercepted. SSH can provide information security and powerful authentication when you log on to the Managed Switch remotely through an insecure network environment. It can encrypt all the transmission data and prevent the information in a remote management being leaked. Comprising server and client, SSH has two versions, V1 and V2, which are not compatible with each other. In the communication, SSH server and client can auto-negotiate the SSH version and the encryption algorithm. After getting a successful negotiation, the client sends authentication request to the server for login, and then the two can communicate with each other after successful authentication.

This Managed Switch supports SSH server and you can log on to the switch via SSH connection using SSH client software. SSH key can be downloaded into the Managed Switch. If the key is successfully downloaded, the certificate authentication will be preferred for SSH access to the Managed Switch. The screen in Figure 4-2-19 appears.

ccess Control SSL Config	SSH Config	
Global Config		
SSH:	○ Enable    Disable	
Protocol V1:	● Enable ○ Disable	
Protocol V2:	Inable O Disable	Apply
Idle Timeout:	500 sec (1-999)	Help
Max Connect:	5 (1-5)	
Key Download		
Choose the SSH public k	ey file to download into switch.	
Key Type:	SSH-2 RSA/DSA	Download
Key File:	Browse	
Note:		
It will take a long time to down	load the key file. Please wait without any operation.	

Figure 4-2-19: SSH Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Global Config	
• SSH	Select Enable/Disable the SSH function on the Managed Switch.
Protocol V1	Select Enable/Disable SSH V1 to be the supported protocol.
Protocol V2	Select Enable/Disable SSH V2 to be the supported protocol.
Idle Timeout	Specify the idle timeout time. The system will automatically release the connection when the time is up. The default time is 120 seconds.
Max.Connect	Specify the maximum number of the connections to the SSH server. No new connection will be established when the number of the connections reaches the maximum number you set. The default value is 5.
Key Download	
Certification File	Select the type of SSH key to download. The Managed Switch supports three
	types: SSH-1 RSA, SSH-2 RSA and SSH-2 DSA.
Key Download	
• Кеу Туре	Select the desired key file to download.
Key File	Click the <b>Download</b> button to download the desired key file to the Managed Switch.

#### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help

: Click to display help web page.

Download

: Click to download the files.



Please ensure the key length of the downloaded file is in the range of 256 to 3072 bits.

After the key file is downloaded, the user's original key of the same type will be replaced. The wrong uploaded file will result in the SSH access to the Managed Switch via Password authentication.



# Application Example 1 for SSH:

## > Network Requirements

- 1. Log on to the Managed Switch via password authentication using SSH and the SSH function is enabled on the Managed Switch.
- 2. PuTTY client software is recommended.

### > Configuration Procedure

1. Open the software to log on to the interface of PuTTY. Enter the IP address of the Managed Switch into **Host Name** field; keep the default value 22 in the **Port** field; select SSH as the Connection type.

😵 PuIIY Configuration 🛛 🛛 🗙					
Category:	Category:				
🖃 Session	^	Basic options for your PuTTY session			
⊡ Logging ⊡ Terminal Keyboard		Specify the destination you want to connect to Host Name (or IP address) <u>Port</u>			
── Bell ── Features ⊡- Window		Connection type: ○ <u>R</u> aw ○ <u>I</u> elnet ○ Rlogin ● <u>S</u> SH ○ Serial			
Appearance Behaviour Translation	=	Load, save or delete a stored session Sav <u>e</u> d Sessions			
Colours		Default Settings			
Data Proxy Telnet		Sa <u>v</u> e Delete			
⊡ SSH					
Auth TTY		Liose <u>window on exit:</u> Always Never Only on clean exit			
<u>About</u>	~	<u>O</u> pen <u>C</u> ancel			

2. Click the **Open** button in the above figure to log on to the Managed Switch. Enter the login user name and password, and then you can continue to configure the Managed Switch.



# Application Example 2 for SSH:

## > Network Requirements

- 1. Log on to the Managed Switch via key authentication using SSH and the SSH function is enabled on the Managed Switch.
- 2. PuTTY client software is recommended.

## > Configuration Procedure

1. Select the key type and key length, and generate SSH key.

😴 PuIIY Key Generator		? 🛛
<u>F</u> ile <u>K</u> ey Con <u>v</u> ersions <u>H</u> elp		
Key		
No key.		
Actions		
Generate a public/private key pair	Generate a key	<u>G</u> enerate
Load an existing private key file		Load
Save the generated key	Save <u>pu</u> blic key	Save private key
Parameters		
Type of key to generate: SSH-1 (RSA) SSH-2 B	Key type SA ○ SSH	I-2 <u>D</u> SA
Number of <u>b</u> its in a generated key:	Key leng	rth 1024



- The key length is in the range of 256 to 3072 bits.
- During the key generation, randomly moving the mouse quickly can accelerate the key generation.
- After the key is successfully generated, please save the public key and private key to the computer.



😴 PuIIY Key Gena	rator		? 🛛
<u>F</u> ile <u>K</u> ey Con <u>v</u> ersion	s <u>H</u> elp		
Key			
Public key for pasting in	nto OpenSSH authorize	d_keys file:	
AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EA	AAABJQAAAIBo2aOYsi	F+WsJaScst/h+ny5wo	U3Jm7c4C2y/2IS
GmzQSRDSHJW8TCx	sECfMMI35wClhDwDb( 1n3lVn5X7dpu2ePe59!	06b7A9Xim/ZYIrFL+Wi 5UK6euEaTeYWf0vwe	WnaJOH49Nokrp R2e5TCTDxWKe
NQ== rsa-key-2010012	20		<u> </u>
Key fingerprint:	ssh-rsa 1023 38:cd:9e	:14:da:b1:6a:9e:2b:ff:4	3:69:e5:47:f4:60
Key <u>c</u> omment:	rsa-key-20100120		
Key p <u>a</u> ssphrase:			
Confirm passphrase:			
Actions			
Generate a public/priva	ate key pair		<u>G</u> enerate
Load an existing private	e key file		Load
Save the generated ke	y	Save p <u>u</u> blic key	<u>S</u> ave private key
Parameters			
Type of key to generate SSH- <u>1</u> (RSA)	e:	🔿 SSF	I-2 <u>D</u> SA
Number of <u>b</u> its in a gen	erated key:		1024

2. On the Web management page of the Managed Switch, download the public key file saved in the computer to the Managed Switch.

Key Download		
Choose the SSH	public key file to download into switch.	
Key Type:	SSH-2 RSA/DSA 🗸	Download
Key File:	Browse	





🕵 PuITY Configu	rat	ion 🗙
Category:		
🖃 Session	~	Basic options for your PuTTY session
Logging		Specify the destination you want to connect to
🖃 Terminal		Host Name (or IP address) Port
Reyboard Pall		192.168.0.1
- Features		Connection type:
⊟ Window		O <u>R</u> aw O <u>I</u> elnet ORlogin ⊙ <u>S</u> SH OSerial
Appearance		
- Behaviour		Load, save or delete a stored session
Translation	≣	Saved Sessions
Selection		
		Default Settings
Data		
Proxy		
- Telnet		Delete
Rlogin		
SSH		
- Nex		Close window on exit:
- TTY		O Always O Never 💿 Only on clean exit
-X11	~	
About		<u>O</u> pen <u>C</u> ancel

3. Click Browse to download the private key file to SSH client software and click Open.



After successful authentication, please enter the login user name. If you log on to the Managed Switch without entering password, it indicates that the key has been successfully loaded.



# 4.3 Switching

Use the System menu items to display and configure basic administrative details of the Managed Switch. Under System the following topics are provided to configure and view the system information:

The Switching function is used to configure the basic functions of the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-3-1 appears.

FGSW-4840S	Port Config	Port Mirror	Port Security	Port Isolation	Loopback D	etection		
	Port Conf	īq						
System		5					Port	Select
Switching	Selec	t Port	Des	cription	Status	Speed and Duplex	Flow Control	LAG
Port					Disable •	10MHD •	Disable •	
• LAG		1			Enable	Auto	Disable	4
<ul> <li>Traffic Monitor</li> </ul>		2			Enable	Auto	Disable	
<ul> <li>MAC Address</li> </ul>		3			Enable	Auto	Disable	
DHCP Filtering		4			Enable	Auto	Disable	
VLAN		5			Enable	Auto	Disable	
Spanning Tree		6			Enable	Auto	Disable	
Multicast		7			Enable	Auto	Disable	
405		8			Enable	Auto	Disable	
		9			Enable	Auto	Disable	
		10			Enable	Auto	Disable	
Maintenance		11			Enable	Auto	Disable	
Save Config		12			Enable	Auto	Disable	
Lanaut		13			Enable	Auto	Disable	
		14			Enable	Auto	Disable	
		15			Enable	Auto	Disable	
Copyright © 2014				Apply	Help	]		
PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.	Note: The Port [	Description shou	Id be not more that	an 16 characters.				

#### Figure 4-3-1: Port Page Screenshot

This section has the following items:

Port	Configure per port basic features of Managed Switch.
LAG	Configure static trunk or LACP on this page.
Traffic Monitor	The Managed Switch per port Ethernet Traffic statistics monitor
MAC Addrrss	Configure MAC Address related function on this page.
DHCP Filtering	Configure DHCP Filtering function on this page.



# 4.3.1 Port

The Port function, allowing you to configure the basic features for the port, is implemented on the **Port Config**, **Port Mirror**, **Port Security**, **Port Isolation** and **Loopback Detection** pages. The screen in Figure 4-3-2 appears.

ort Confi	g						
						Port	Select
Select	Port	Des	cription	Status	Speed and Duplex	Flow Control	LAG
				Disable 🔻	10MHD •	Disable <b>v</b>	
	1			Enable	Auto	Disable	^
	2			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	3			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	4			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	5			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	6			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	7			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	8			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	9			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	10			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	11			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	12			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	13			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	14			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	15			Enable	Auto	Disable	
			Apply	Help			

Figure 4-3-2: Port Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Config	View the port connection status and the system information on this page.
Port Mirror	Configure the description of the Managed Switch, including device name, device location and system contact on this page.
Port Security	Configure the system time and the settings here will be used for other time-based functions on this page.
Port Isolation	Configure the Daylight Saving Time of the Managed Switch on this page.
Loopback Detection	Configure the system IP of the Managed Switch on this page.



# 4.3.1.1 Port Config

This page provides configuring the basic parameters for the ports of Managed Switch. When the port is disabled, the packets on the port will be discarded. Disabling the port which is vacant for a long time can reduce the power consumption effectively and it can enable the port when it is in need; the screen in Figure 4-3-3 appears.

Config	Port Mirror	Port Security	Port Isolation	Loopback D	etection		
Port Confu	-						
or conn	y					Port	Salact
Select	Port	Des	cription	Status	Speed and Dupley	Flow Control	
	1 Oit	Dest	inpuon				LAG
	1			Enable	Auto	Disable	A
	2			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	3			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	4			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	5			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	6			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	7			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	8			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	9			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	10			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	11			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	12			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	13			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	14			Enable	Auto	Disable	
	15			Enable	Auto	Disable	
			Apply	Help			
ote:							

## Figure 4-3-3: Port Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Config	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port number that entered.
Select	Select the desired port for configuration. It is multi-optional.
• Port	Displays the port number.
Description	Give a description to the port for identification.
Status	Allows you to enable/disable the port. When Enable is selected, the port can
	forward the packets normally.
Speed and Duplex	Select the Speed and Duplex mode for the port. The device connected to the



	Managed Switch should be in the same Speed and Duplex mode with the Managed
	Switch. When "Auto" is selected, the Speed and Duplex mode will be determined
	by auto-negotiation. For the SFP port, this Managed Switch does not support
	auto-negotiation.
Flow Control	Allows you to enable/disable the Flow Control feature. When Flow Control is
	enabled, the Managed Switch can synchronize the speed with its peer to avoid the
	packet loss caused by congestion.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.

## Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.

~	The port description can accept 16 characters only.
<b>B</b>	The Managed Switch cannot be managed through the disabled port. Please enable the port which is used to manage the Managed Switch.
Note	The parameters of the port members in a LAG should be set as the same.
_	
	When using the SFP port with a 100M module or a gigabit module, it needs to configure its
国的	corresponding Speed and Duplex mode.
Note	For 100M module, please select 100MFD while selecting 1000MFD for gigabit module. By
	default, the Speed and Duplex mode of SFP port is 1000MFD. (For FGSW-2840 only)



# 4.3.1.2 Port Mirror

Port Mirror, the packets obtaining technology, functions to forward copies of packets from one/multiple ports (mirrored port) to a specific port (mirroring port). Usually, the mirroring port is connected to a data diagnose device, which is used to analyze the mirrored packets for monitoring and troubleshooting the network. The screen in Figure 4-3-4 appears.

Mirror Gro	un List				
Group	Mirroring	Mode	Mirrored Port	Operation	
		Ingress		<b>T</b> 10	
1	U	Egress		Edit	
2	0	Ingress		E dia	
		Egress		Edit	
2	0	3 0	Ingress		Edit
5		Egress		Luit	
4	4 0	Ingress		– Edit	
		Egress		Luit	
			Help		

Figure 4-3-4: Port Mirror Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Mirror Group List	
• Group	Displays the mirror group number.
Mirroring	Displays the mirroring port number.
• Mode	Displays the mirror mode.
Mirrored Port	Displays the mirrored ports.
Operation	Click Edit to configure the mirror group.



Click Edit and the following screen appears.

rt Config	Port Mirror	Port Security Port Isolati	ion Loopback Detection	
Mirror Gro	up			
Numb	er:	1 🔻		
Mirroring F	Port			
Mirrori	na Port:	Disable 🔻		
	5			
Mirrored P	ort			
			Port	Select
Select	Port	Ingress	Egress	LAG
		Disable 🔻	Disable 🔻	
	1	Disable	Disable	^
	2	Disable	Disable	
	3	Disable	Disable	
	4	Disable	Disable	
	5	Disable	Disable	
	6	Disable	Disable	
	7	Disable	Disable	
	8	Disable	Disable Disable	
	9	Disable	Disable	
	10	Disable	Disable	
	11	Disable	Disable Disable	
	12	Disable	Disable	+
		Apply Return	Help	

Figure 4-3-5: Port Mirror Edit Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Mirror Group	
• Group	Select the mirror group number that wants to configure.
Mirroring Port	
Mirroring Port	Select the mirroring port number.
Mirrored Port	
Port Select	Click the Select button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port



	number you entered.
Select	Select the desired port as a mirrored port. It is multi-optional.
• Port	Displays the port number.
• Ingress	Select Enable/Disable the Ingress feature. When the Ingress is enabled, the incoming packets received by the mirrored port will be copied to the mirroring port.
• Egress	Select Enable/Disable the Egress feature. When the Egress is enabled, the outgoing packets sent by the mirrored port will be copied to the mirroring port.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to. The LAG member cannot be selected as the mirrored port or mirroring port.



The LAG member cannot be selected as the mirrored port or mirroring port. A port cannot be set as the mirrored port and the mirroring port simultaneously. The Port Mirror function can span multiple VLANs to take effect.

#### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Select: Click to select the port.

Return

: Click to return to the previous screen.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



## 4.3.1.3 Port Security

MAC Address Table maintains the mapping relationship between the port and the MAC address of the connected device, which is the base of the packet forwarding. The capacity of MAC Address Table is fixed. MAC Address Attack is the attack method that the attacker takes to obtain the network information illegally. The attacker uses tools to generate the cheating MAC address and quickly occupy the MAC Address Table. When the MAC Address Table is full, the Managed Switch will broadcast the packets to all the ports. At this moment, the attacker can obtain the network information via various sniffers and attacks. When the MAC Address Table is full, the packets to forwarding the packets traffic will flood to all the ports, which results in overload, lower speed, packets drop and even breakdown of the system.

Port Security is to protect the Managed Switch from the malicious MAC Address Attack by limiting the maximum number of MAC addresses that can be learned on the port. The port with Port Security feature enabled will learn the MAC address dynamically. When the learned MAC address number reaches the maximum, the port will stop learning. Thereafter, the other devices with the MAC address unlearned cannot access the network via this port; the screen in Figure 4-3-6 appears.

t Config	Port Mirror	Port Security Po	rt Isolation Lo	opback Detection		
Port Secur	ity					
Select	Port	Max Learned MAC	Learned Num	Learn Mode	Status	
				Dynamic 🔻	Disable 🔻	
	1	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	2	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	3	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	4	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	5	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	6	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	7	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	8	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	9	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	10	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	11	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	
	12	64	0	Dynamic	Disable	-
		Apply	Help			

Figure 4-3-6: Port Security Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Security	



Select	Select the desired port for Port Security configuration. It is multi-optional.			
Port	Displays the port number.			
Max Learned MAC	Specify the maximum number of MAC addresses that can be learned on the port.			
Learned Num	Displays the number of MAC addresses that have been learned on the port.			
Learned Mode	<ul> <li>Select the Learn Mode for the port.</li> <li>Dynamic: When Dynamic mode is selected, the learned MAC address will be deleted automatically after the aging time.</li> <li>Static: When Static mode is selected, the learned MAC address will be out of the influence of the aging time and can only be deleted manually. The learned entries will be cleared after the Managed Switch is rebooted.</li> <li>Permanent: When Permanent mode is selected, the learned MAC address will be out of the influence of the aging time and can only be deleted.</li> </ul>			
Status	Select Enable/Disable the Port Security feature for the port.			

## Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



The Port Security function is disabled for the LAG port member. Only the port is removed from the LAG will the Port Security function be available for the port.



# 4.3.1.4 Port Isolation

Port Isolation provides a method of restricting traffic flow to improve the network security by forbidding the port to forward packets to the ports that are not on its forward port list; the screen in Figure 4-3-7 appears.

ort Config	Port Mirror	Port Security	Port Isolation	Loopback De	tection	
Port Isolati	on Config					
Port:		1 🔻				
Forwar	d Portlist:					
0 1	2	3	4	5	6	
7	8	9	🔲 10	🗆 11	0 12	
🔲 13	🗆 14	🗆 15	🗆 16	<b>1</b> 7	🔲 18	
🔲 19	20	E 21	22	23	24	
25	26	27	28	29	30	
31	32	33	34	35	36	
37	38	39	<b>40</b>	liiii 41	0 42	
43		45	46	47	48	
- 49		51	52			
		All	Apply Hel	р		
Port Isolati	on List					
F	ort		Forwar	d Portlist		
	1		1-5	2		-
	2		1-5	2		- 11
	3		1-5	2		-8
	4		1-5	2		-1
	с С		1-0	2		- 1
	7		1-5	2		
	8		1-5	2		
	9		1-5	2		
	10		1-5	2		
	11		1-5	2		
	12		1-5	2		
	13		1-5	2		
	14		1-5	2		
	15		1-5	2		-

Figure 4-3-7: Port Isolation Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Isolation Config	
• Port	Select the port number to set its forward list.



Forward Port list
 Select the port that to be forwarded to.

 Port Isolation List
 Display the port number.
 Display the forward list.

#### Buttons



Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.1.5 Loopback Detection

With loopback detection feature enabled, the Managed Switch can detect loops using loopback detection packets. When a loop is detected, the Managed Switch will display an alert or further block the corresponding port according to the port configuration; the screen in Figure 4-3-8 appears.

rt Config 🔰 F	Port Mirror	Port Security	Port Isolation	Loopback Detect	tion	
Global config	)					
Loopback	Detection	Enable •	Disable			
Detection	Interval:	20	seconds(1-	1000)		
Automatic	Recovery	50	30001103(1	1000)		Annhy
Time:		3	detection tir	nes(1-100)		Apply
Web Refr	esh Status:	Enable •	Disable			
Web Refr	esh Interval:	3	seconds(3-	100)		
Port config						
					Port	Select
Select Port	Stat	tus Oper	ration Mode Reco	very Mode Loop	Status Blo	ock Status LAG
	Disab	le 🔻 Aler	t 🔻 Aut	io <b>T</b>		
1	Disable	Alert	Auto			🔺
2	Disable	Alert	Auto			
3	Disable	Alert	Auto			
4	Disable	Alert	Auto			
5	Disable	Alert	Auto			
6	Disable	Alert	Auto			
7	Disable	Alert	Auto			
8	Disable	Alert	Auto			
9	Disable	Alert	Auto			
10	Disable	Alert	Auto			
11	Disable	Alert	Auto			
12	Disable	Alert	Auto			
13	Disable	Alert	Auto			
14	Disable	Alert	Auto			
15	Disable	Alert	Auto			*
		Apply	/ Manual Re	cove Help		

Figure 4-3-8: Loopback Detection Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Global Config	
Loopback Detection	Enable or disable loopback detection function globally.


Status	
Detection Interval	Set a loopback detection interval between 1 and 1000 seconds. By default, it's 30 seconds.
Automatic Recovery Time	Time allowed for automatic recovery when a loopback is detected. It can be set as integral multiple of detection interval.
Web Refresh Status	Enable or disable web automatic refresh function.
Web Refresh Interval	Set a web refresh interval between 3 and 100 seconds. By default, it's 3 seconds.
Port Config	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port number you entered.
Select	Select the desired port for loopback detection configuration. It is multi-optional.
• Port	Displays the port number.
Status	Enable or disable loopback detection function for the port.
Operation Mode	<ul> <li>Select the mode how the Managed Switch processes the detected loops.</li> <li>Alert: when a loop is detected, displays an alert.</li> <li>Port based: when a loopback is detected, displays an alert and blocks the port.</li> </ul>
Recovery Mode	<ul><li>Select the mode how the blocked port recovers to normal status.</li><li>Auto: Block status can be automatically removed after recovery time.</li><li>Manual: Block status only can be removed manually.</li></ul>
Loop Status	Displays the port status whether a loopback is detected.
Block Status	Displays the port status about block or unblock.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number the port belongs to.

## Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Manual Recover

: Click to remove the block status of selected ports.

Help : Click to display help web page.



Recovery Mode is not selectable when Alert is chosen in Operation Mode.

Loopback Detection must coordinate with storm control.



# 4.3.2 LAG

LAG (Link Aggregation Group) is to combine a number of ports together to make a single high-bandwidth data path, so as to implement the traffic load sharing among the member ports in the group and to enhance the connection reliability.

For the member ports in an aggregation group, their basic configuration must be the same. The basic configuration includes **STP**, **QoS**, **VLAN**, **port attributes**, **MAC Address Learning mode** and other associated settings. Further explanations are as follows:

- If the ports, which are enabled for the 802.1Q VLAN, STP, QoS and Port Configuration (Speed and Duplex, Flow Control), are in a LAG, their configurations should be the same.
- The ports, which are enabled for the **Port Security**, **Port Mirror** and **MAC Address Filtering**, cannot be added to the LAG.

If the LAG is needed, suggest to configure the LAG function here before configuring the other functions for the member ports. The screen in Figure 4-3-9 appears.

PLANET Hetworking & Communication	A.A.			
FGSW-4840S	LAG Table Static LAG	LACP Config		
	Global Config			
System Switching	Hash Algorithm:	SRC MAC+DST MAC	]	Apply
• LAG	LAG Table			
<ul> <li>Traffic Monitor</li> </ul>	Select Group Number	Description	Member	Operation
<ul> <li>MAC Address</li> </ul>		No trunk e	xists.	
DHCP Filtering     VLAN		All Delete	Help	
Spanning Tree	-			
Multicast	Note:			
QoS	1. The LAG created by L	ACP can't be deleted.		
ACL				

#### Figure 4-3-9: LAG Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
LAG Table	View the LAG Table on this page.
Static LAG	Configure the static link aggregation function of the Managed Switch on this page.
LACP Config	Configure the LACP function of the Managed Switch on this page.



Calculate the bandwidth for a LAG: If a LAG consists of the four ports in the speed of 1000Mbps full duplex, the whole bandwidth of the LAG is up to 8000Mbps (2000Mbps x 4) because the bandwidth of each member port is 2000Mbps counting the up-linked speed of 1000Mbps and the down-linked speed of 1000Mbps.



The traffic load of the LAG will be balanced among the ports according to the Aggregate Arithmetic. If the connections of one or several ports are broken, the traffic of these ports will be transmitted on the normal ports, so as to guarantee the connection reliability.



# 4.3.2.1 LAG Table

This page provides view the information of the current LAG of Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-3-10 appears.

AC Table Static LAC			
AG Table Static LAC	EACP Conlig		
Global Config			
Ciobal Colling			
Hash Algorithm:	SRC MAC+DST MAC	•	Apply
LAG Tabla			
LAG Table			
Select Group Number	Description	Member	Operation
	No trunk e	exists.	
	All Delete	Help	
Note:			
1. The LAG created by	LACP can't be deleted.		

## Figure 4-3-10: LAG Table Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Global Config	
Hash Algorithm	Select the applied scope of Aggregate Arithmetic, which results in choosing a port
	to transfer the packets.
	• SRC MAC + DST MAC: When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic
	will apply to the source and destination MAC addresses of the packets.
	• SRC IP + DST IP: When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will
	apply to the source and destination IP addresses of the packets.
LAG Table	·
Select	Select the desired LAG. It is multi-optional.
Group Number	Displays the LAG number here.
Description	Displays the description of LAG.
Member	Displays the LAG member.
Operation	Allows you to view or modify the information for each LAG.
	Edit: Click to modify the settings of the LAG.
	Detail: Click to get the information of the LAG.



### Buttons



Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.2.2 Static LAG

This page provides manually configuring the LAG of Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-3-11 appears.

LAG Config						
Group N	umber:	LAG1	T			
Descript	ion:					
Member Port			<b>.</b> .			
U 1	2	3	4	5	6	
7	8	9	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	
li 13	14	L 15	L 16	· 17	· 18	
19	20	21	22	23	24	
25	26	27	28	29	30	
31	32	33	34	35	36	
37	38	39	<b>40</b>	<b>41</b>	42	
43	44	45	46	47	48	
<b>4</b> 9	50	51	52			
		Apply	Clear H	elp		

3. The LAG created by LACP can't be modified.

## Figure 4-3-11: Static LAG Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
LAG Config	
Group Number	Select a Group Number for the LAG.
Description	Displays the description of the LAG.
Member Port	
Member Port	Select the port as the LAG member. Clearing all the ports of the LAG will delete this
	LAG.



Calculate the bandwidth for a LAG: If a LAG consists of the four ports in the speed of 1000Mbps full duplex, the whole bandwidth of the LAG is up to 8000Mbps (2000Mbps x 4) because the bandwidth of each member port is 2000Mbps counting the up-linked speed of 1000Mbps and the down-linked speed of 1000Mbps.





The traffic load of the LAG will be balanced among the ports according to the Aggregate Arithmetic. If the connections of one or several ports are broken, the traffic of these ports will be transmitted on the normal ports, so as to guarantee the connection reliability.

#### **Buttons**





Click to display help web page.

# 4.3.2.3 LACP Config

Help

LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) is defined in IEEE802.3ad and enables the dynamic link aggregation and disaggregation by exchanging LACP packets with its partner. The Managed Switch can dynamically group similarly configured ports into a single logical link, which will highly extend the bandwidth and flexibly balance the load.

With the LACP feature enabled, the port will notify its partner of the system priority, system MAC, port priority, port number and operation key (operation key is determined by the physical properties of the port, upper layer protocol and admin key). The device with higher priority will lead the aggregation and disaggregation. System priority and system MAC decide the priority of the device. The smaller the system priority, the higher the priority of the device is. With the same system priority, the device owning the smaller system MAC has the higher priority. The device with the higher priority will choose the ports to be aggregated based on the port priority, port number and operation key. Only the ports with the same operation key can be selected into the same aggregation group. In an aggregation group, the port with smaller port priority will be considered as the preferred one. If the two port priorities are equal, the port with smaller port number is preferred. After an aggregation group is established, the selected ports can be aggregated together as one port to transmit packets.

This page allows configuring the LACP feature of the Managed Switch, the screen in Figure 4-3-12 appears.



obarc	Jonlig					
Syst	tem Pric	ority: 327	68 (0 - 65	535)		Apply
ACP C	onfig					
					Port	Select
Select	Port	Admin Key	Port Priority (0-65535)	Mode	Status	LAG
				Passive V	Disable 🔻	
	1	1	32768	Passive	Disable	^
	2	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	3	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	4	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	5	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	6	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	7	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	8	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	9	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	10	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	11	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	12	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	13	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	14	1	32768	Passive	Disable	
	15	1	32768	Passive	Disable	•
			Apply	Help		
				<u> </u>		

3. The value of admin key can't be the same with the group number of any static link aggregation group in used and vice versa.

# Figure 4-3-12: LACP Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Global Config	
System Priority	Specify the system priority for the Managed Switch. The system priority and MAC
	address constitute the system identification (ID). A lower system priority value
	indicates a higher system priority. When exchanging information between systems,
	the system with higher priority determines which link aggregation a link belongs to,
	and the system with lower priority adds the proper links to the link aggregation
	according to the selection of its partner.
LACP Config	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port
	number you entered.



Select	Select the desired port for LACP configuration. It is multi-optional.
Port	Displays the port number.
Admin Key	Specify an admin key for the port. The member ports in a dynamic aggregation
	group must have the same admin key.
Port Priority	Specify a Port Priority for the port. This value determines the priority of the port to
(0-65535)	be selected as the dynamic aggregation group member. The port with smaller Port
	Priority will be considered as the preferred one. If the two port priorities are equal;
	the port with smaller port number is preferred.
• Mode	Specify LACP mode for selected port.
Status	Enable/Disable the LACP feature for your selected port.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.

### Buttons

Apply

: Click to apply changes.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.3 Traffic Monitor

The Traffic Monitor function, monitoring the traffic of each port, is implemented on the **Traffic Summary** and **Traffic Statistics** pages. The screen in Figure 4-3-13 appears.

GSW-4840S	Trame Sum	Imary Traffic	Statistics				
	Auto R	efresh					
System	Au	to Refresh:	Enable	Disable		_	
witching	Re	fresh Rate:		SP	c (3-300)	Appl	у
Port	T C	incon reace.			c (5 500)		
LAG							
Traffic Monitor	Traffic	Summary					
MAC Address					Port	Sele	ect
UHCP Filtering	Port	Packets Rx	Packets Tx	Octets Rx	Octets Tx	Statistics	
	1	0	0	0	0	Statistics	^
panning Tree	2	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	3	0	0	0	0	Statistics	_
03	4	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	5	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	6	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	7	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
ave Config	8	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
agout	9	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
ogout	10	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	11	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	12	0	0	0	0	Statistics	*

Figure 4-3-13: Traffic Monitor Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Traffic Summary	The Traffic Summary screen displays the traffic information of each port.
Traffic Statistics	The Traffic Statistics screen displays the detailed traffic information of each port.



# 4.3.3.1 Traffic Summary

This page provides displaying the traffic information of each port, which facilitates to monitor the traffic and analyze the network abnormity; the screen in Figure 4-3-14 appears.

uto R	efresh					
Au	to Refresh:	Enable	Disable			r
Re	fresh Rate:		sec (3-300)			ly
Fraffic (	Summary					
	,			Port	Sel	ect
Port	Packets Rx	Packets Tx	Octets Rx	Octets Tx	Statistics	_
1	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
2	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
3	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
4	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
5	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
6	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
7	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
8	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
9	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
10	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
11	0	0	0	0	Statistics	
	0	0	0	0	Statistics	-

Figure 4-3-14: Traffic Summary Page Screenshot

Object	Description	
Auto Refresh		
Auto Refresh	Provides Enable/Disable refreshing the Traffic Summary automatically.	
Refresh Rate	Enter a value in seconds to specify the refresh interval.	
Traffic Summary		
Port Select	Click the Select button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port	
	number you entered.	
Port	Displays the port number.	
Packets Rx	Displays the number of packets received on the port. The error packets are not	



	counted in.
Packets Tx	Displays the number of packets transmitted on the port.
Octets Rx	Displays the number of octets received on the port. The error octets are counted in.
Octets Tx	Displays the number of octets transmitted on the port.
Statistics	Click the <b>Statistics</b> button to view the detailed traffic statistics of the port.

# 4.3.3.2 Traffic Statistics

This page provides displaying the detailed traffic information of each port, which facilitates to monitor the traffic and locate faults promptly; the screen in Figure 4-3-15 appears.

affic Summary Traffic Statist	ics				
Auto Refresh					
Auto Refresh:	Enable	Disable	)		
Refresh Rate:			sec (3-300)		Apply
Statistics					
				Port 1	Select
Received				Sent	
Broadcast	0		Broadcast	0	
Multicast	0		Multicast	0	
Unicast	0		Unicast	0	
Alignment Errors	0		Collisions	0	
UndersizePkts	0				
Pkts64Octets	0				
Pkts65to127Octets	0				
Pkts128to255Octets	0				
Pkts256to511Octets	0				
Pkts512to1023Octets	0				
PktsOver1023Octets	0				
	Re	fresh	Help		

Figure 4-3-15: Traffic Statistics Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Auto Refresh	
Auto Refresh	Provides Enable/Disable refreshing the Traffic Summary automatically.



Refresh Rate	Enter a value in seconds to specify the refresh interval.
Statistics	
Port Select	Enter a port number and click the Select button to view the traffic statistics of the
	corresponding port.
Receviced	Displays the details of the packets received on the port.
Sent	Displays the details of the packets transmitted on the port.
Broadcast	Displays the number of good broadcast packets received or transmitted on the port.
	The error frames are not counted in.
Multicast	Displays the number of good multicast packets received or transmitted on the port.
	The error frames are not counted in.
Unicast	Displays the number of good unicast packets received or transmitted on the port.
	The error frames are not counted in.
Alignment Errors	Displays the number of the received packets that have a bad Frame Check
	Sequence (FCS). The length of the packet is from 64 bytes to maximal bytes of the
	jumbo frame (usually 10240 bytes).
UndersizePkts	Displays the number of the received packets (excluding error packets) that are less
	than 64 bytes long.
Pkts64Octets	Displays the number of the received packets (including error packets) that are 64
	bytes long.
Pkts65to127Octets	Displays the number of the received packets (including error packets) that are
	between 65 and 127 bytes long.
Pkts128to255Octets	Displays the number of the received packets (including error packets) that are
	between 128 and 255 bytes long.
Pkts256to511Octets	Displays the number of the received packets (including error packets) that are
	between 256 and 511 bytes long.
Pkts512to1023Octets	Displays the number of the received packets (including error packets) that are
	between 512 and 1023 bytes long.
PktsOver1023Octets	Displays the number of the received packets (including error packets) that are over
	1023 bytes.
Collisions	Displays the number of collisions experienced by a port during packet
	transmissions.



# 4.3.4 MAC Address

The main function of the Managed Switch is forwarding the packets to the correct ports based on the destination MAC address of the packets. Address Table contains the port-based MAC address information, which is the base for the Managed Switch to forward packets quickly. The entries in the Address Table can be updated by auto-learning or configured manually. Most of the entries are generated and updated by auto-learning. In the stable networks, the static MAC address entries can facilitate the Managed Switch to reduce broadcast packets and enhance the efficiency of packets forwarding remarkably. The address filtering feature allows the Managed Switch to filter the undesired packets and forbid its forwarding so as to improve the network security.

The types and the features of the MAC Address Table are listed as follows:

Туре	Configuration Way	Aging out	Being kept after reboot (if the configuration is saved)	Relationship between the bound MAC address and the port
Static Address Table	Manually configuring	No	Yes	The bound MAC address cannot be learned by the other ports in the same VLAN.
Dynamic Address Table	Automatically learning	Yes	No	The bound MAC address can be learned by the other ports in the same VLAN.
Filtering Address Table	Manually configuring	No	Yes	-

**Table 5-1:** Types and Features of Address Table

The screen in Figure 4-3-16 appears.

PLANET Retworkley & Communication				
FGSW-4840S	Address Table Static Address	Dynamic Address	Filtering Address	
	Search Option			
System Switching • Port • LAG • Traffic Monitor • MAC Address	MAC Address:	Port1 ▼ ● All ○ Static ○	) (Format: 00-00-00-0 ) (1-4094) Dynamic <sup>©</sup> Filterin	0-00-01) Search Help
DHCP Filtering	Address Table			
Spanning Tree	MAC Address	VLAN ID	Port Ty	pe Aging Status
Multicast	90-E6-BA-92-55-AE	1	49 Dyn	amic Aging
QoS ACL SNMP	Total MAC Address: 1 <b>Note:</b> The maximum of the displayed er	ntries is 100 by default	, please click the Sear	ch button to get the complete
Maintenance	address entries.			

#### Figure 4-3-16: MAC Address Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description			
Address Table	Allow to view all the information of the Address Table.			
Static Address	The static address table maintains the static address entries which can be added or removed manually.			
Dynamic Address	The dynamic address can be generated by the auto-learning mechanism of the Managed Switch.			
Filtering Address	The filtering address is to forbid the undesired packets to be forwarded.			

# 4.3.4.1 Address Table

This page provides viewing all the information of the Address Table; the screen in Figure 4-3-17 appears.

MAC Address:		(Format: 00-	-00-00-00-00-01)	
VLAN ID:		(1-4094)		Search
Port:	Port 1 ▼	_		Help
🔲 Туре:	🛛 All 🔍 Static 🔍	Dynamic 🔍	Filtering	
Address Table				
MAC Address	VLAN ID	Port	Туре	Aging Status
90-E6-BA-92-55-AE	1	49	Dynamic	Aging

Figure 4-3-17: Address Table Page Screenshot

Object	Description			
Search Option				
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of desired entry.			
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID of desired entry.			
Port	Select the corresponding port number of your desired entry.			



• Туре	Select the type of your desired entry.					
	<ul> <li>All: This option allows the address table to display all the address entries.</li> <li>Static: This option allows the address table to display the static address entries only.</li> </ul>					
	• <b>Dynamic:</b> This option allows the address table to display the dynamic address entries only.					
	• <b>Filtering:</b> This option allows the address table to display the filtering address entries only.					
Address Table						
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address learned by the Managed Switch.					
VLAN ID Displays the corresponding VLAN ID of the MAC address.						
• Port	Displays the corresponding Port number of the MAC address.					
• Туре	Displays the Type of the MAC address.					
Aging Status	Displays the Aging status of the MAC address.					

## Buttons

Search : Click to search.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.4.2 Static Address

The static address table maintains the static address entries which can be added or removed manually, independent of the aging time. In the stable networks, the static MAC address entries can facilitate the Managed Switch to reduce broadcast packets and remarkably enhance the efficiency of packets forwarding without learning the address. The static MAC address learned by the port with **Port Security** enabled in the static learning mode will be displayed in the Static Address Table. The screen in Figure 4-3-18 appears.

Address Table	Static Address	Dynamic Address	Filtering Addres	s	
Create Static	Address				
MAC Add	dress:		(Format: 00-00-00	0-00-00-01)	
VLAN ID:			(1-4094)		Create
Port:		Port 1 🔻			
Search Optio	n				
Search C	ption:	All 🔻			Search
Static Addres	ss Table				
Select	MAC Address	VLAN ID	Port	Туре	Aging Status
			Port 1 V		
		Apply Delet	e Help		
Total MAC Ad Note:	ldress: 0				
The maximum address entrie	n of the displayed en es.	ntries is 100 by default	, please click the S	earch button to	get the complete

Figure 4-3-18: Static Address Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Create Static Address	
MAC Address	Enter the static MAC Address to be bound.
VLAN ID	Enter the corresponding VLAN ID of the MAC address.
Port	Select a port from the pull-down list to be bound.
Search Option	
Search Option	Select a Search Option from the pull-down list and click the Search button to find
	your desired entry in the Static Address Table.



	VLAN ID: Enter the VLAN ID number of your desired entry.			
	Port: Enter the Port number of your desired entry.			
Static Address Table				
Select	Select the entry to delete or modify the corresponding port number. It is			
	multi-optional.			
MAC Address	Displays the static MAC Address.			
VLAN ID	Displays the corresponding VLAN ID of the MAC address.			
• Port	Displays the corresponding Port number of the MAC address. Here you can modify the port number to which the MAC address is bound. The new port should be in the same VLAN.			
• Туре	Displays the Type of the MAC address.			
Aging Status	Displays the Aging Status of the MAC address.			

MAC: Enter the MAC address of your desired entry.

 If the corresponding port number of the MAC address is not correct, or the connected port (or the device) has been changed, the Managed Switch cannot forward the packets correctly.
 Please reset the static address entry appropriately.

If the MAC address of a device has been added to the Static Address Table, connecting the device to another port will cause its address not to be recognized dynamically by the Managed Switch. Therefore, please ensure the entries in the Static Address Table are correct and valid.



The MAC address in the Static Address Table cannot be added to the Filtering Address Table or bound to a port dynamically.

This static MAC address bound function is not available if the 802.1X feature is enabled.

## Buttons

Create

L: Click to add new static MAC Address.

Search : Click to search.

A	рp	V.	

: Click to apply changes.

Delete .

Click to delete the current MAC address.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.4.3 Dynamic Address

The dynamic address can be generated by the auto-learning mechanism of the Managed Switch. The Dynamic Address Table can update automatically by auto-learning or aging out the MAC address. To fully utilize the MAC address table, which has a limited capacity, the Managed Switch adopts an aging mechanism for updating the table. That is, the Managed Switch removes the MAC address entries related to a network device if no packet is received from the device within the aging time. This page provides configuring the dynamic MAC address entry and the screen in Figure 4-3-19 appears.

dress Table	e Static Address	[	Dynamic Addre	ss Filtering	Address	
Aging Cor	nfig					
Auto /	Aging:	•	Enable 🔍 Di	sable		
Aging	Time:	300		sec (10-63	0, default: 300)	Apply
Search O	ption					
Searc	h Option:	All	•			Search
Dynamic /	Address Table					
Select	MAC Address		VLAN ID	Port	Туре	Aging Status
	90-E6-BA-92-55-A	E	1	49	Dynamic	Aging
	_					
		All	Delete	Bind	Help	
Total MAC	Address: 1					
Note:						
The maxim address er	num of the displayed	entrie	s is 100 by def	tauit, please clici	k the Search buttor	n to get the complete

### Figure 4-3-19: Dynamic Address Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Aging Config	
Auto Aging	Allows to enable/disable the Auto Aging feature.
Aging Time	Enter the Aging Time for the dynamic address.
Search Option	
Search Option	Select a Search Option from the pull-down list and click the Search button to find
	your desired entry in the Dynamic Address Table.
	<ul> <li>MAC: Enter the MAC address of desired entry.</li> <li>VLAN ID: Enter the VLAN ID number of desired entry.</li> </ul>



	Port: Enter the Port number of desired entry.
	• LAG ID : Enter the LAG ID of desired entry.
Dymanic Address Table	
Select	Select the entry to delete the dynamic address or to bind the MAC address to the
	corresponding port statically. It is multi-optional.
MAC Address	Displays the dynamic MAC Address.
• VLAN ID	Displays the corresponding VLAN ID of the MAC address.
Port	Displays the corresponding port number of the MAC address.
• Туре	Displays the Type of the MAC address.
Aging Status	Displays the Aging Status of the MAC address.

Vote

Setting aging time properly helps implement effective MAC address aging. The aging time that is too long or too short results decreases the performance of the Managed Switch. If the aging time is too long, excessive invalid MAC address entries maintained by the Managed Switch may fill up the MAC address table. This prevents the MAC address table from updating with network changes in time. If the aging time is too short, the Managed Switch may remove valid MAC address entries. This decreases the forwarding performance of the Managed Switch. It is recommended to keep the default value.

#### **Buttons**

Apply Click to apply changes.

Search Click to search.



Click to select all the current MAC Address.

Delete

Bind

: Click to delete the current MAC address.

Click the Bind button to bind the MAC address of selected entry to the corresponding port statically.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.4.4 Filtering Address

The filtering address is to forbid the undesired packets to be forwarded; the filtering address can be added or removed manually, independent of the aging time. The filtering MAC address allows the Managed Switch to filter the packets which includes this MAC address as the source address or destination address, so as to guarantee the network security. The filtering MAC address entries act on all the ports in the corresponding VLAN and the screen in Figure 4-3-20 appears.

dress Table	Static Address	Dynamic Address	Filtering Add	lress	
Create Filter	ing Address				
MAC Ad	ldress:		(Format: 00-0	0-00-00-00-01)	
VLAN ID	):		(1-4094)		Create
Search Opti	on				
Search (	Option: A	.   ▼			Search
Filtering Add	Iress Table				
Select	MAC Address	VLAN ID	Port	Туре	Aging Status
		All Delet	te Help		
Total MAC A	ddress: 0				
The maximur address entri	n of the displayed ent es.	tries is 100 by default	, please click th	e Search button to	o get the complete

Figure 4-3-20: Filtering Address Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Create Filtering Address	
MAC Address	Enter the MAC Address to be filtered.
VLAN ID	Enter the corresponding VLAN ID of the MAC address.
Search Option	
Search Option	Select a Search Option from the pull-down list and click the <b>Search</b> button to find
	your desired entry in the Filtering Address Table.
	MAC Address: Enter the MAC address of desired entry.
	VLAN ID: Enter the VLAN ID number of desired entry.
Filtering Address Table	
Select	Select the entry to delete the corresponding filtering address. It is multi-optional.



Displays the filtering MAC Address. MAC Address Displays the corresponding VLAN ID. • VLAN ID Here the symbol "\_\_\_" indicates no specified port. • Port Displays the Type of the MAC address. • Type Displays the Aging Status of the MAC address. Aging Status



The MAC address in the Filtering Address Table cannot be added to the Static Address Table or bound to a port dynamically.

## **Buttons**



Click to add one new filtering address.

: Click to search.

: Click to select all the current MAC Address.

: Click to delete the current MAC address.

Help Click to display help web page.



# 4.3.5 DHCP Filtering

Nowadays, the network is getting larger and more complicated. The amount of the PCs always exceeds that of the assigned IP addresses. The wireless network and the laptops are widely used and the locations of the PCs are always changed. Therefore, the corresponding IP address of the PC should be updated with a few configurations. DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) functions are to solve the above mentioned problems.

However, during the working process of DHCP, generally there is no authentication mechanism between Server and Client. If there are several DHCP servers in the network, network confusion and security problem will happen. To protect the Managed Switch from being attacked by illegal DHCP servers, configure the desired ports as trusted ports and only the clients connected to the trusted ports can receive DHCP packets from DHCP severs. Here the DHCP Filtering function performs to monitor the process of hosts obtaining IP addresses from DHCP servers.

#### > DHCP Working Principle

DHCP works via the "**Client/Server**" communication mode. The Client applies to the Server for configuration. The Server assigns the configuration information, such as the IP address, to the Client, so as to reach a dynamic employ of the network source. A Server can assign IP address to several Clients, which is illustrated in the following figure.



Figure 4-3-21: Network Diagram of DHCP

For different DHCP clients, DHCP server provides three IP address assigning methods:

- (1) Manually assign the IP address: Allows the administrator to bind the static IP address to a specific client (e.g., WWW Server) via the DHCP server.
- (2) Automatically assign the IP address: DHCP server assigns the IP address without an expiry time limitation to the clients.
- (3) Dynamically assign the IP address: DHCP server assigns the IP address with an expiry time. When the time for the IP address expired, the client should apply for a new one.

Most clients obtain IP addresses dynamically, which is illustrated in the following figure.





Figure 4-3-22: Interaction between a DHCP Client and a DHCP Server

- (1) **DHCP-DISCOVER Stage:** The Client broadcasts the DHCP-DISCOVER packet to find the DHCP server.
- (2) DHCP-OFFER Stage: Upon receiving the DHCP-DISCOVER packet, the DHCP server selects an IP address from the IP pool according to the assigning priority of the IP addresses and replies to the client with DHCP-OFFER packet carrying the IP address and other information.
- (3) DHCP-REQUEST Stage: In the situation that there are several DHCP servers sending the DHCP-OFFER packets, the client will only respond to the first received DHCP-OFFER packet and broadcast the DHCP-REQUEST packet which includes the assigned IP address of the DHCP-OFFER packet.
- (4) DHCP-ACK Stage: Since the DHCP-REQUEST packet is broadcasted, all DHCP servers on the network segment can receive it. However, only the requested server processes the request. If the DHCP server acknowledges assigning this IP address to the client, it will send the DHCP-ACK packet back to the client. Otherwise, the Server will send the DHCP-NAK packet to refuse assigning this IP address to the client.

## > DHCP Cheating Attack

During the working process of DHCP, generally there is no authentication mechanism between Server and Client. If there are several DHCP servers in the network, network confusion and security problem will happen. The common cases incurring the illegal DHCP servers are the following two:

- (1) It's common that the illegal DHCP server is manually configured by the user by mistake.
- (2) Hacker exhausted the IP addresses of the normal DHCP server and then pretended to be a legal DHCP server to assign the IP addresses and the other parameters to Clients. For example, hacker used the pretended DHCP server to assign a modified DNS server address to users so as to induce the users to the evil financial website or electronic trading website and cheat the users of their accounts and passwords. The following figure illustrates the DHCP Cheating Attack implementation procedure.





## Figure 4-3-23: DHCP Cheating Attack Implementation Procedure

DHCP Filtering feature allows only the trusted ports to forward DHCP packets and thereby ensures that users get proper IP addresses. DHCP Filtering is to monitor the process of hosts obtaining the IP addresses from DHCP servers, and record the IP address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host for automatic binding. DHCP Filtering feature prevents the network from the DHCP Server Cheating Attack by discarding the DHCP packets on the distrusted port, so as to enhance the network security. The screen in Figure 4-3-24 appears.

PLANET Hetworking & Communication	12					
FGSW-4840S	DHCP Filtering					
	DHCP Filter	ring				
System Switching	DHCP F	Filtering:	Enable •	Disable		Apply
• Port • LAG	Trusted Por	t				
Traffic Monitor	1	2	3	□ <u>4</u>	5	6
• DHCP Filtering	13	□ 14	15	16	17	18
VLAN	🔲 <u>1</u> 9	20	21	III 22	23	24
Spanning Tree	25	26	27	28	29	30
Multicast	31	32	33	34	35	36
QoS	37	38	39	<b>4</b> 0	<b>41</b>	42
ACL	<b>4</b> 3	44	45	46	47	48
SNMP	<b>4</b> 9	50	51	52		
Maintenance Save Config	~		Apply All	Clear	Help	

Figure 4-3-24: DHCP Filtering Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
DHCP Filtering	
DHCP Filtering	Enable/Disable the DHCP Filtering function globally.
Trusted Port	
Trusted Port	Select the desired port(s) to be Trusted Port(s). Only the Trusted Port(s) can
	receive DHCP packets from DHCP Servers. Click the <b>All</b> buttons to select all ports.
	Click the <b>Clear</b> button to select none.

## Buttons

Apply	: Click to apply changes.
All	Click to select all ports.



Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.4 VLAN

# **VLAN Overview**

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a network topology configured according to a logical scheme rather than the physical layout. VLAN can be used to combine any collection of LAN segments into an autonomous user group that appears as a single LAN. VLAN also logically segment the network into different broadcast domains so that packets are forwarded only between ports within the VLAN. Typically, a VLAN corresponds to a particular subnet, although not necessarily.

VLAN can enhance performance by conserving bandwidth, and improve security by limiting traffic to specific domains.

A VLAN is a collection of end nodes grouped by logic instead of physical location. End nodes that frequently communicate with each other are assigned to the same VLAN, regardless of where they are physically on the network. Logically, a VLAN can be equated to a broadcast domain, because broadcast packets are forwarded to only members of the VLAN on which the broadcast was initiated.





No matter what basis is used to uniquely identify end nodes and assign these nodes VLAN membership, packets cannot cross VLAN without a network device performing a routing function between the VLAN.



The Managed Switch supports IEEE 802.1Q VLAN. The port untagging function can be used to remove the 802.1 tag from packet headers to maintain compatibility with devices that are tag-unaware.



# 4.4.1 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN

In large networks, routers are used to isolate broadcast traffic for each subnet into separate domains. This Managed Switch provides a similar service at Layer 2 by using VLANs to organize any group of network nodes into separate broadcast domains. VLANs confine broadcast traffic to the originating group, and can eliminate broadcast storms in large networks. This also provides a more secure and cleaner network environment.

An IEEE 802.1Q VLAN is a group of ports that can be located anywhere in the network, but communicate as though they belong to the same physical segment.

VLANs help to simplify network management by allowing you to move devices to a new VLAN without having to change any physical connections. VLANs can be easily organized to reflect departmental groups (such as Marketing or R&D), usage groups (such as e-mail), or multicast groups (used for multimedia applications such as videoconferencing).

VLANs provide greater network efficiency by reducing broadcast traffic, and allow you to make network changes without having to update IP addresses or IP subnets. VLANs inherently provide a high level of network security since traffic must pass through a configured Layer 3 link to reach a different VLAN.

This Managed Switch supports the following VLAN features:

- Up to 512 VLANs based on the IEEE 802.1Q standard
- Port overlapping, allowing a port to participate in multiple VLANs
- End stations can belong to multiple VLANs
- Passing traffic between VLAN-aware and VLAN-unaware devices

### IEEE 802.1Q Standard

**IEEE 802.1Q (tagged) VLAN** are implemented on the Managed Switch. 802.1Q VLAN require tagging, which enables them to span the entire network (assuming all switches on the network are IEEE 802.1Q-compliant).

VLAN allow a network to be segmented in order to reduce the size of broadcast domains. All packets entering a VLAN will only be forwarded to the stations (over IEEE 802.1Q enabled switches) that are members of that VLAN, and this includes broadcast, multicast and unicast packets from unknown sources.

VLAN can also provide a level of security to your network. IEEE 802.1Q VLAN will only deliver packets between stations that are members of the VLAN. Any port can be configured as either **tagging** or **untagging**:

- The untagging feature of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN allows VLAN to work with legacy switches that don't recognize VLAN tags in packet headers.
- The tagging feature allows VLAN to span multiple 802.1Q-compliant switches through a single physical connection and allows Spanning Tree to be enabled on all ports and work normally.

Some relevant terms:

- **Tagging** The act of putting 802.1Q VLAN information into the header of a packet.
- Untagging The act of stripping 802.1Q VLAN information out of the packet header.



# 802.1Q VLAN Tags

The figure below shows the 802.1Q VLAN tag. There are four additional octets inserted after the source MAC address. Their presence is indicated by a value of **0x8100** in the Ether Type field. When a packet's Ether Type field is equal to 0x8100, the packet carries the IEEE 802.1Q/802.1p tag. The tag is contained in the following two octets and consists of 3 bits of user priority, 1 bit of Canonical Format Identifier (CFI - used for encapsulating Token Ring packets so they can be carried across Ethernet backbones), and 12 bits of **VLAN ID (VID)**. The 3 bits of user priority are used by 802.1p. The VID is the VLAN identifier and is used by the 802.1Q standard. Because the VID is 12 bits long, 4094 unique VLAN can be identified.

The tag is inserted into the packet header making the entire packet longer by 4 octets. All of the information originally contained in the packet is retained.

#### 802.1Q Tag



The Ether Type and VLAN ID are inserted after the MAC source address, but before the original Ether Type/Length or Logical Link Control. Because the packet is now a bit longer than it was originally, the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) must be recalculated.





# Port VLAN ID

Packets that are tagged (are carrying the 802.1Q VID information) can be transmitted from one 802.1Q compliant network device to another with the VLAN information intact. This allows 802.1Q VLAN to span network devices (and indeed, the entire network – if all network devices are 802.1Q compliant).

Every physical port on a switch has a PVID. 802.1Q ports are also assigned a PVID, for use within the switch. If no VLAN are defined on the switch, all ports are then assigned to a default VLAN with a PVID equal to 1. Untagged packets are assigned the



PVID of the port on which they were received. Forwarding decisions are based upon this PVID, in so far as VLAN are concerned. Tagged packets are forwarded according to the VID contained within the tag. Tagged packets are also assigned a PVID, but the PVID is not used to make packet forwarding decisions, the VID is.

Tag-aware switches must keep a table to relate PVID within the switch to VID on the network. The switch will compare the VID of a packet to be transmitted to the VID of the port that is to transmit the packet. If the two VID are different the switch will drop the packet. Because of the existence of the PVID for untagged packets and the VID for tagged packets, tag-aware and tag-unaware network devices can coexist on the same network.

A switch port can have only one PVID, but can have as many VID as the switch has memory in its VLAN table to store them.

Because some devices on a network may be tag-unaware, a decision must be made at each port on a tag-aware device before packets are transmitted – should the packet to be transmitted have a tag or not? If the transmitting port is connected to a tag-unaware device, the packet should be untagged. If the transmitting port is connected to a tag-aware device, the packet should be tagged.

# Default VLANs

The Managed Switch initially configures one VLAN, VID = 1, called "default." The factory default setting assigns all ports on the Managed Switch to the "default". As new VLAN are configured in Port-based mode, their respective member ports are removed from the "default."

# Assigning Ports to VLANs

Before enabling VLANs for the Managed Switch, you must first assign each port to the VLAN group(s) in which it will participate. By default all ports are assigned to VLAN 1 as untagged ports. Add a port as a tagged port if you want it to carry traffic for one or more VLANs, and any intermediate network devices or the host at the other end of the connection supports VLANs. Then assign ports on the other VLAN-aware network devices along the path that will carry this traffic to the same VLAN(s), either manually or dynamically using GVRP. However, if you want a port on this Managed Switch to participate in one or more VLANs, but none of the intermediate network devices nor the host at the other end of the connection supports VLANs, then you should add this port to the VLAN as an untagged port.



VLAN-tagged frames can pass through VLAN-aware or VLAN-unaware network interconnection devices, but the VLAN tags should be stripped off before passing it on to any end-node host that does not support VLAN tagging.

# VLAN Classification

When the Managed Switch receives a frame, it classifies the frame in one of two ways. If the frame is untagged, the Managed Switch assigns the frame to an associated VLAN (based on the default VLAN ID of the receiving port). But if the frame is tagged, the Managed Switch uses the tagged VLAN ID to identify the port broadcast domain of the frame.

# Port Overlapping

Port overlapping can be used to allow access to commonly shared network resources among different VLAN groups, such as file servers or printers. Note that if you implement VLANs which do not overlap, but still need to communicate, you can connect them by enabled routing on this Managed Switch.

# Untagged VLANs

Untagged (or static) VLANs are typically used to reduce broadcast traffic and to increase security. A group of network users assigned to a VLAN form a broadcast domain that is separate from other VLANs configured on the Managed Switch. Packets are forwarded only between ports that are designated for the same VLAN. Untagged VLANs can be used to manually isolate user groups or subnets.



# 4.4.2 VLAN Config

This page provides configuring the 802.1Q VLAN and its ports; the screen in Figure 4-4-2 appears.

VLAN Croot	0													
VLAN ID:	.e				(2-40	94)							_	
					(16 d	haracte	rs						C	reate
Name:		ma	ximum)		] (									
			,											
VI AN Table														
VE/14 TODIC	,									VLAN	ID 🗌		Sel	ect
Select VLAN ID Name Untagged Ports Tagged Ports Operation														
1 Default VLAN     1-52     Delete														
VLAN Mem	bershir	)												
VL	AN ID							VLAN	l Name					
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	۲	0	0	0	0
Tagged	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
NotMember	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 •	1 •	1 🔻	1 🔻
LAG														
Port	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
Untagged		0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
raggeo														
MotMombor.	10000						1 -	1 -	1 -	1 -	1 -	1 -		1 -
NotMember		1 -	1 -	1 1	1 1 1									
PVID	1 •	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻							1 *	
PVID LAG	1 T	1 ▼  30	1 T	1 ▼  32	1 T	1 V  34								
PVID PVID LAG Port Untagged	1 ▼  29 ⊙	1 ▼  30	1 ▼  31 ◎	1 ▼  32 ◎	1 ▼  33 ◎	1 •  34	 35	 36	 37	38	 39	40	 41	42
PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged	1 T  29 0	1 ▼  30 ○	1 ▼  31 ©	1 ▼  32 ©	1 ▼  33 ◎	1 •  34 0	 35 0	 36 0	 37 0	 38 0	 39 0	 40 0	 41 0	 42 0
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember	1 ▼  29 0 0 ⊛	1 ▼  30 ⊙ ⊙	1 ▼  31 ⊙ ⊛	1 ▼  32 ⊙ ⊙ ⊛	1 V  33 0 0 0	1 •  34 0 0	 35 0 0	 36 0 0	 37 0	 38 0 0	 39 0	 40 0 0	 41 0 0	 42 0 0
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID	1 ▼  29 0 0 0 0 0	1 ▼  30 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	1 ▼  31 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	1 ▼  32 ⊙ ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	1 ▼  33 ○ ○ ◎ 1 ▼	1 ▼  34 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	 35 ○ ◎ ⑧	 36 ○ ◎ 1 ▼	 37 ○ ◎ 1 ▼	 38 0 0	 39 ○ ◎ 1 ▼	 40 ○ ◎ 1 ▼	1 · 41 ○ ◎ 1 ·	 42 ○ ◎ 1 ▼
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID LAG	1 ▼  29 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 ▼	1 ▼  30 ⊙ ⊙ 0 0 1 ▼ 	1 ▼  31 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	1 ▼  32 ○ ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 	1 V  33 0 0 0 8 1 V	1 ▼  34 ⊙ ⊙ ● 1 ▼ 	 35 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼	 36 ○ ○ 1 ▼	 37 ○ ◎ 1 ▼	 38 0 0 0 0 0 1 V	 39 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 7	 40 ⊙ ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	 41 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 	 42 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID LAG Port	1 ▼  29 0 0 ⊛ 1 ▼  43	1 V  30 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 V  44	1 •  31 0 0 (0) (0) (0) (0) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1	1 V  32 0 0 0 0 1 V  46	1 •  33 0 0 0 0 1 • 47	1 ▼  34 ○ ○ ⑧ 1 ▼  48	 35 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  49	 36 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼ 50	 37 ⊙ ⊙ ● 1 ▼ 51	 38 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  52	 39 ⊙ ⊙ ● 1 ▼	 40 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	 41 ⊙ ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	 42 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged	1  29 0 0 0 0 1  43 0	1 ▼  30 ○ ○ ⑧ 1 ▼  44 ○	1 ▼  31 ○ ○ ⑧ 1 ▼  45 ○	1 ▼  32 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  46 ○	1 ▼  33 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  47 ○	1 ▼  34 ○ ○ ⊛ 1 ▼  48 ○	 35 ○ ◎ 1 ▼  49 ○	 36 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  50 ○	37 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 51 ○	 38 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  52 ○	 39 ⊙ ⊙ ● 1 ▼	 40 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼ 	 41 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	 42 ◎ ◎ 1 ▼
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged	1 ▼  29 ◎ ◎ ◎ 1 ▼  43 ◎ ○	1 ▼  30 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼  44 ⊙ ⊙	1 ▼  31 ○ ● 1 ▼  45 ○ 0 ○	1 ▼  32 ○ ● 1 ▼  46 ○ ○	1 ▼  33 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  47 ○ ○	1 ▼  34 ○ ◎ ● 1 ▼  48 ○ ○	 35 ◎ ◎ 1 ▼ 49 ◎ ◎	36 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 50 ○ ○	37 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 51 ○ ○	 38 ◎ ◎ ● 1 ▼  52 ◎ 0	 39 ⊙ ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼	 40 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼ 	 41 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼ 	 42 ◎ ◎ 1 ▼ 
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember	1 V  29 0 0 0 0 0 1 V  43 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	1 ▼  30 ○ ● 1 ▼  44 ○ ● ● 0 ● ●	1 ▼  31 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  45 ○ ○ ● ●	1 ▼  32 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  46 ○ ○ ●	1 ▼  33 ○ ○ ● ■ 1 ▼  47 ○ ○ ● ●	1 ▼  34 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  48 ○ ○ ● ● () ● () ● () () () () () () () () () ()	 35 ○ ◎ 1 ▼  49 ○ ○ ◎	 36 ○ ◎ 1 ▼  50 ○ ○ ◎	37 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  51 ○ ○ ●	 38 ○ ● 1 ▼  52 ○ ○ ● ● ●	 39 0 0 • 1	 40 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼ 	41 ○ ◎ 1 ▼	 42 ◎ ◎ ● 1 ▼
NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID LAG Port Untagged Tagged NotMember PVID	1 V 29 0 8 1 V 43 0 0 8 1 V	1 ▼  30 ○ () () () () () () () () () ()	1 ▼  31 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  45 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼ 1 ▼	1 ▼  32 0 0 0 8 1 ▼  46 0 0 8 1 ▼	1 V  33 0 0 8 1 V  47 0 0 8 8 1 V	1 V  34 0 0 * 1 V  48 0 0 * 1 V  48 0 0 * 1 V	 35 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  49 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼	 36 ○ ● 1 ▼  50 ○ ● 1 ▼ 1 ▼	37 ○ 0 0 0 0 1 ▼  51 ○ 0 0 0 0 1 ▼	 38 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  52 ○ ○ ○ ● 1 ▼  52 ○ ○ ● 1 ▼	 39 ○ ◎ 1 ▼ 	 40 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼ 	 41 ⊙ ⊛ 1 ▼ 	 42 ◎ ◎ 1 ▼ 

Figure 4-4-2: VLAN Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
VLAN Create	
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID that wants to create. It ranges from 2 to 4094.
Name	Give a name to the VLAN for identification.



# VLAN Table

VLAN ID Select	Click the Select button to quickly select the corresponding VLAN based on the
	VLAN ID you entered.
Select	Select the desired port for configuration.
• VLAN ID	Displays the VLAN ID.
Name	Displays the name of the specific VLAN.
Untagged Ports	Show the untagged ports of the specific VLAN.
Tagged Ports	Show the tagged ports of the specific VLAN.
Operation	Delete the specific VLAN when clicking the word "Delete".
VLAN Membership	
• VLAN ID	Displays the VLAN ID that is chosen.
VLAN Name	Set the name of the VLAN that is chosen.
• Port	Displays the port number.
Untagged	The port will be an untagged member of the specific VLAN if selected.
• Tagged	The port will be a tagged member of the specific VLAN if selected.
NotMember	The port will not be a member of the specific VLAN if selected.
• PVID	Change the PVID of the specific port.
• LAG	Displays the LAG to which the port belongs.
• LAG	Displays the LAG to which the port belongs.

## Buttons

Create : Click to new 802.1Q VLAN groups.

Apply : Click

: Click to apply changes.

Help: : Click to display help web page.



The VLAN ID range is 2 to 4094.

The VLAN name can accept 16 characters only.



## VLAN setting example:

- Separate VLANs
- 802.1Q VLAN Trunk

## Two separate 802.1Q VLANs

The diagram shows how the Managed Switch handles Tagged and Untagged traffic flow for two VLANs. VLAN Group 2 and VLAN Group 3 are separated VLANs. Each VLAN isolate network traffic so only members of the VLAN receive traffic from the same VLAN members. The screen in Figure 4-4-3 appears and Table 4-4-1 describes the port configuration of the Managed Switches.



#### Figure 4-4-3: Two Separate VLAN Diagrams

VLAN Group	VID	Untagged Members	Tagged Members
VLAN Group 1	1	Port-7~Port-8	N/A
VLAN Group 2	2	Port-1,Port-2	Port-3
VLAN Group 3	3	Port-4,Port-5	Port-6

Table 4-4-1: VLAN and Port Configuration



The scenario is described as follows:

#### Untagged packet entering VLAN 2

- While [PC-1] an untagged packet enters Port-1, the Managed Switch will tag it with a VLAN Tag=2. [PC-2] and [PC-3] will receive the packet through Port-2 and Port-3.
- 2. [PC-4],[PC-5] and [PC-6] received no packet.
- 3. While the packet leaves **Port-2**, it will be stripped away becoming an **untagged** packet.
- 4. While the packet leaves **Port-3**, it will be kept as a **tagged** packet with **VLAN Tag=2**.

#### Tagged packet entering VLAN 2

- While [PC-3] a tagged packet with VLAN Tag=2 enters Port-3, [PC-1] and [PC-2] will receive the packet through Port-1 and Port-2.
- 2. While the packet leaves Port-1 and Port-2, it will be stripped away becoming an untagged packet.

### Untagged packet entering VLAN 3

- While [PC-4] an untagged packet enters Port-4, the Managed Switch will tag it with a VLAN Tag=3. [PC-5] and [PC-6] will receive the packet through Port-5 and Port-6.
- 2. While the packet leaves **Port-5**, it will be stripped away becoming an **untagged** packet.
- 3. While the packet leaves Port-6, it will be kept as a tagged packet with VLAN Tag=3.



In this example, VLAN Group 1 is set as default VLAN, but only focuses on VLAN 2 and VLAN 3 traffic flow.

#### Setup steps

### 1. Create VLAN Group 2 and 3

Add VLAN group 2 and group 3.

				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
	2	20002			Delete
	3	30003			Delete

## 2. Assign member port to VLAN group 2 and group 3:

Port-1,Port-2 and Port-3: VLAN 2 group.

Port-4, Port-5 and Port-6: VLAN 3 group.



# VLAN Table

				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
	2	20002	1-3		Delete
	3	30003	4-6		Delete

VLAN Mem	bership													_
VLAN ID				2				VLAN Name				20002		
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged	۲	۲	۲	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Tagged	$\circ$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
NotMember	$\circ$	0	0	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🛩	1 🛩	1 🗸	1 🛩	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸
LAG														

VLAN Ta	able				
				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
	2	20002	1-3		Delete
	3	30003	4-6		Delete

VLAN Mem	bership													_	
VLAN ID				3				VLAN Name				30003			
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	
Untagged	$\circ$	$\circ$	0	۲	۲	۲	0	$\circ$	0	0	$\circ$	0	0	$\circ$	
Tagged	$\circ$	$\circ$	$\circ$	$\circ$	0	$\circ$	$\circ$	$\circ$	0	0	$\circ$	0	$\circ$	$\circ$	
NotMember	۲	۲	۲	0	0	0	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	
PVID	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🛩	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	
LAG															

# 3. Assign Tagged/Untagged to each port:

## 4. Assign PVID to each port:

VLAN ID = 2:

Port-1 & 2 = Untagged with PVID 2.

Port-3 = Tagged with PVID 2.

Port -4~6 = Not Member.



VLAN Ta	able				
				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
<b>&gt;</b>	2	20002	1-2	3	Delete
	3	30003	4-6		Delete

VLAN Mem	bership													_
	VLAN IE	)		2				VLAN Name				20002		
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged	۲	۲	0	0	0	$\circ$	$\circ$	$\circ$	$\circ$	0	$\circ$	$\circ$	$\circ$	0
Tagged	$\circ$	0	۲	0	0	0	0	$\circ$	0	0	$\circ$	0	0	0
NotMember	0	0	0	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	2 🗸	2 🗸	2 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🛩	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸
LAG														
Port	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28

VLAN ID = 3:

Port-4 & 5 = Untagged with PVID 3.

Port -6 = Tagged with PVID 3.

Port-1~3 = Not Member.

VLAN Table											
				VLAN ID	Select						
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation						
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete						
	2	20002	1-2	3	Delete						
Image: A start of the start	3	30003	4-5	6	Delete						

VLAN Mem	bership													_
VLAN ID				3				VLAN Name				30003		
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged	$\circ$	0	0	۲	۲	0	0	$\circ$	0	0	0	0	0	0
Tagged	$\circ$	0	0	0	0	۲	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
NotMember	۲	۲	۲	0	0	0	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	2 🗸	2 🗸	2 🗸	3 🗸	3 🗸	3 🗸	1 🛩	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🛩	1 🕶	1 🗸	1 🕶
LAG														
Port	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28

107



# VLAN Trunking between two 802.1Q aware switches

Most of the cases are used for "**Uplink**" to other switches. VLANs are separated at different switches, but they need to access with other switches within the same VLAN group. The screen in Figure 4-4-4 appears.



Figure 4-4-4: VLAN Trunking between Two 802.1Q Aware Switches Diagrams

#### Setup steps

#### 1. Create VLAN Group 2 and 3

Add VLAN group 2 and group 3.

VLAN Ta	able				
				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
	2	20002			Delete
	3	30003			Delete

## 2. Assign member port to VLAN group 2 and group 3:

Port-1,Port-2 and Port-3: VLAN 2 group. Port-4,Port-5 and Port-6: VLAN 3 group. Port-7 : VLAN 1 group.


VLAN Tal	ble													
										VLA	AN ID		Sel	lect
Select	VLAN ID	Nar	me		Unt	agged Por	ts			Tagg	ed Ports		Op	peration
	1	Default	t VLAN			1-52							[	Delete
	2	200	02			1-3							[	Delete
	3	300	03			4-6							[	Delete
VLAN Me	mbership													_
	VLANT	<u>,</u>												
	VEANNE	)			2			VLA	N Name			20002		
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8 VLA	N Name 9	10	11	12	13	14
Port Jntagged	1	2 ③	3	4	5	6	7	8 0	9 O	10	11	12 0	13	14 ()
Port Jntagged Tagged	1 ③	2 ③	3 ②	4	5 0 0	6 〇	7	8 0 0	9 O O	10 〇	11 〇 〇	12 0	13 〇 〇	14 〇 〇
Port Jntagged Tagged NotMemb		2 ③ 〇	3 ③ 〇	4 〇 〇	2 5 0 0	6 〇 〇	7 ○ ○	8 0 0	9 O O O O	10 〇 〇	11 〇 〇	12 0 0 0	13 〇 〇	14 〇 〇
Port Jntagged Tagged NotMembe PVID		2 ③ 〇 1 ♥	3 () () () () () () () () () ()	4 〇 〇 〇 1 ❤	2 5 0 0	6 〇 〇 ④ 1 ¥	7 ○ ○ 1 ¥	8 ○ ○ 1 ▼	9 0 0 0 1	10 〇 〇 〇 1 ¥	11 〇 〇 1 V	12 0 0 1 1 1 1 1	13 〇 〇 〇 1 ♥	14 〇 〇 〇 1

VLAN 1	able				
				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
	2	20002	1-3		Delete
	3	30003	4-6		Delete

VLAN Mem	bership													_
VLAN ID						3 VLAN Name					30003			
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged	$\circ$	0	0	۲	۲	۲	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Tagged	$\circ$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
NotMember	۲	۲	۲	0	0	0	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸	1 🗸
LAG														

### 3. Assign Tagged/Untagged to each port:

### 4. Assign PVID to each port:

VLAN ID = 1:

Port-1~3 = Untagged with PVID 2.

Port-4~6 = Untagged with PVID 3.

Port -7 = Tagged with PVID 1.



VLAN Ta	ble													
										VLA	N ID		] Se	lect
Select	VLAN ID	Na	me		Unt	tagged Po	rts			Tagg	ed Ports		0	peration
	1	Defaul	t VLAN			1-52								Delete
	2	200	002			1-2					3			Delete
	3	300	003			4-5					6			Delete
VLAN Me	embership													_
VLAN Me	embership VLAN	ID			1			VL	AN Name			Default	/LAN	]
VLAN Me Port	embership VLAN 1	ID 2	3	4	1	6	7	VL 8	AN Name 9	10	11	Default \	VLAN 13	14
VLAN Me Port Untagge	embership VLAN 1 d ()	ID 2	3	4	1	6	7	VL 8 •	AN Name 9 ()	10	11	Default V 12	/LAN 13 •	14
VLAN Me Port Untagge Tagged	embership VLAN 1 d ()	ID 2 ©	3	4	1 5 •	6	7	VL 8 •	AN Name 9 ©	10 •	11 ()	Default V 12	VLAN 13 •	14 ••
VLAN Me Port Untagge Tagged NotMemb	embership VLAN d • er	ID 2 0	3	4	1 5 0	6 •	7 () () ()	VL 8 0	AN Name 9 0	10	11	Default <sup>1</sup> 12 0	/LAN 13	14 •
VLAN Me Port Untagge Tagged NotMemb PVID	embership VLAN d er 2	D 2 0 0 2 7	3 ● ● 2 ▼	4 ● ● 3 ▼	1 ● ● 3 ▼	6 ● ● 3 ▼	7 () () () () () () () () () ()	VL 8 0 0	AN Name 9 0 0	10 ● ● 1 ▼	11 ● ● 1 ▼	Default 12 0 0	/LAN 13	14 ● ● 1 ▼

VLAN ID = 2:

Port-1 & 2 = Untagged with PVID 2.

Port-3 = Tagged with PVID 2.

Port-7 = Tagged with PVID 1.

Port -4~6 = Not Member.

VLAN Ta	ible				
				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
<b></b>	2	20002	1-2	3	Delete
	3	30003	4-5	6	Delete

VLAN Mem	bership													_
	VLAN I	D		2				VLAN Name				20002		
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged	۲	۲					$\odot$	$\bigcirc$			$\bigcirc$			$\bigcirc$
Tagged	$\bigcirc$	0	۲		0	$\bigcirc$	۲	$\bigcirc$	0	0	$\bigcirc$	0	$\bigcirc$	$\bigcirc$
NotMember	$\bigcirc$			۲	۲	۲	$\odot$	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	2 🔻	2 🔻	2 🔻	3 🔻	3 🔻	3 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻
LAG														

VLAN ID = 3:

Port-4 & 5 = Untagged with PVID 3.

Port -6 = Tagged with PVID 3.

Port -7= Tagged with PVID 1.

Port-1~3 = Not Member.



# VLAN Table

				VLAN ID	Select
Select	VLAN ID	Name	Untagged Ports	Tagged Ports	Operation
	1	Default VLAN	1-52		Delete
	2	20002	1-2	3	Delete
1	3	30003	4-5	6	Delete

VLAN Mem	bership													
VLAN ID 3						VLAN Name 30003								
Port	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Untagged			0	۲	۲						0			
Tagged	$\bigcirc$		0	0		۲	۲		0	•	0	0	0	•
NotMember	۲	۲	۲	0				۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲	۲
PVID	2 🔻	2 🔻	2 🔻	3 🔻	3 🔻	3 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻	1 🔻
LAG														



# 4.5 Spanning Tree

# Theory

The Spanning Tree Protocol can be used to detect and disable network loops, and to provide backup links between switches, bridges or routers. This allows the Managed Switch to interact with other bridging devices in your network to ensure that only one route exists between any two stations on the network, and provide backup links which automatically take over when a primary link goes down. The spanning tree algorithms supported by this Managed Switch include these versions:

- STP Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1D)
- RSTP Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1w)
- MSTP Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s)

The **IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree** Protocol and **IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree** Protocol allow for the blocking of links between switches that form loops within the network. When multiple links between switches are detected, a primary link is established. Duplicated links are blocked from use and become standby links. The protocol allows for the duplicate links to be used in the event of a failure of the primary link. Once the Spanning Tree Protocol is configured and enabled, primary links are established and duplicated links are blocked automatically. The reactivation of the blocked links (at the time of a primary link failure) is also accomplished automatically without operator intervention.

This automatic network reconfiguration provides maximum uptime to network users. However, the concepts of the Spanning Tree Algorithm and protocol are a complicated and complex subject and must be fully researched and understood. It is possible to cause serious degradation of the performance of the network if the Spanning Tree is incorrectly configured. Please read the following before making any changes from the default values.

The Managed Switch STP performs the following functions:

- Creates a single spanning tree from any combination of switching or bridging elements.
- Creates multiple spanning trees from any combination of ports contained within a single Managed Switch, in user specified groups.
- Automatically reconfigures the spanning tree to compensate for the failure, addition, or removal of any element in the tree.
- Reconfigures the spanning tree without operator intervention.

### Bridge Protocol Data Units

For STP to arrive at a stable network topology, the following information is used:

- The unique Managed Switch identifier.
- The path cost to the root associated with each Managed Switch port.
- The port identifier.

STP communicates between switches on the network using Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs). Each BPDU contains the following information:

The unique identifier of the Managed Switch that the transmitting Managed Switch currently believes is the root



switch.

- The path cost to the root from the transmitting port.
- The port identifier of the transmitting port.

The Managed Switch sends BPDUs to communicate and construct the spanning-tree topology. All switches connected to the LAN on which the packet is transmitted will receive the BPDU. BPDUs are not directly forwarded by the Managed Switch, but the receiving switch uses the information in the frame to calculate a BPDU, and, if the topology changes, initiates a BPDU transmission.

The communication between switches via BPDUs results in the following:

- One Managed Switch is elected as the root switch.
- The shortest distance to the root switch is calculated for each Managed Switch.
- A designated Managed Switch is selected. This is the Managed Switch closest to the root switch through which packets will be forwarded to the root.
- A port for each Managed Switch is selected. This is the port providing the best path from the Managed Switch to the root switch.
- Ports included in the STP are selected.

### Creating a Stable STP Topology

It is to make the root port a fastest link. If all switches have STP enabled with default settings, the Managed Switch with the lowest MAC address in the network will become the root switch. By increasing the priority (lowering the priority number) of the best Managed Switch, STP can be forced to select the best Managed Switch as the root switch.

When STP is enabled using the default parameters, the path between source and destination stations in a switched network might not be ideal. For instance, connecting higher-speed links to a port that has a higher number than the current root port can cause a root-port change.

#### **STP Port States**

The BPDUs take some time to pass through a network. This propagation delay can result in topology changes where a port that transitioned directly from a Blocking state to a Forwarding state could create temporary data loops. Ports must wait for new network topology information to propagate throughout the network before starting to forward packets. They must also wait for the packet lifetime to expire for BPDU packets that were forwarded based on the old topology. The forward delay timer is used to allow the network topology to stabilize after a topology change. In addition, STP specifies a series of states a port must transition through to further ensure that a stable network topology is created after a topology change.

### Each port on a switch using STP exists is in one of the following five states:

- Blocking the port is blocked from forwarding or receiving packets.
- Listening the port is waiting to receive BPDU packets that may tell the port to go back to the blocking state.
- Learning the port is adding addresses to its forwarding database, but not yet forwarding packets.
- **Forwarding** the port is forwarding packets.
- **Disabled** the port only responds to network management messages and must return to the blocking state first.



#### A port transitions from one state to another as follows:

- From initialization (switch boot) to blocking.
- From blocking to listening or to disabled.
- From listening to learning or to disabled.
- From learning to forwarding or to disabled.
- From forwarding to disabled.
- From disabled to blocking.



Figure 4-5-1: STP Port State Transitions

You can modify each port state by using management software. When you enable STP, every port on every Managed Switch in the network goes through the blocking state and then transitions through the states of listening and learning at power up. If properly configured, each port stabilizes to the forwarding or blocking state. No packets (except BPDUs) are forwarded from, or received by, STP enabled ports until the forwarding state is enabled for that port.

### 2. STP Parameters

### **STP Operation Levels**

The Managed Switch allows for two levels of operation: the Managed Switch level and the port level. The Managed Switch level forms a spanning tree consisting of links between one or more switches. The port level constructs a spanning tree consisting of groups of one or more ports. The STP operates in much the same way for both levels.





On the switch level, STP calculates the Bridge Identifier for each Managed Switch and then sets the Root Bridge and the Designated Bridges.

On the port level, STP sets the Root Port and the Designated Ports.

The following are the user-configurable STP parameters for the switch level:

Parameter	Description	Default Value
Bridge Identifier(Not user	A combination of the User-set priority and	32768 + MAC
configurable	the switch's MAC address.	
except by setting priority	The Bridge Identifier consists of two parts:	
below)	a 16-bit priority and a 48-bit Ethernet MAC	
	address 32768 + MAC.	
Priority	A relative priority for each switch – lower	32768
	numbers give a higher priority and a greater	
	chance of a given switch being elected as	
	the root bridge.	
Hello Time	The length of time between broadcasts of	2 seconds
	the hello message by the switch.	
Maximum Age Timer	Measures the age of a received BPDU for a	20 seconds
	port and ensures that the BPDU is discarded	
	when its age exceeds the value of the	
	maximum age timer.	
Forward Delay Timer	The amount time spent by a port in the	15 seconds
	learning and listening states waiting for a	
	BPDU that may return the port to the	
	blocking state.	

The following are the user-configurable STP parameters for the port or port group level:

Variable	Description	Default Value
Port Priority	A relative priority for each	128
	port –lower numbers give a higher priority	
	and a greater chance of a given port being	
	elected as the root port.	
Port Cost	A value used by STP to evaluate paths –	200,000-100Mbps Fast Ethernet ports
	STP calculates path costs and selects the	20,000-1000Mbps Gigabit Ethernet
	path with the minimum cost as the active	ports
	path.	0 - Auto



#### Default Spanning-Tree Configuration

Feature	Default Value
Enable state	STP disabled for all ports
Port priority	128
Port cost	0
Bridge Priority	32,768

#### User-Changeable STA Parameters

The Managed Switch's factory default setting should cover the majority of installations. However, it is advisable to keep the default settings as set at the factory; unless, it is absolutely necessary. The user changeable parameters in the Managed Switch are as follows:

Priority – A Priority for the Managed Switch can be set from 0 to 65535. 0 is equal to the highest Priority.

**Hello Time** – The Hello Time can be from 1 to 10 seconds. This is the interval between two transmissions of BPDU packets sent by the Root Bridge to tell all other Switches that it is indeed the Root Bridge. If you set a Hello Time for Managed Switch, and it is not the Root Bridge, the set Hello Time will be used if and when Managed Switch becomes the Root Bridge.

The Hello Time cannot be longer than the Max. Age. Otherwise, a configuration error will occur.

**Max. Age** – The Max Age can be from 6 to 40 seconds. At the end of the Max Age, if a BPDU has still not been received from the Root Bridge, Managed Switch will start sending its own BPDU to all other Switches for permission to become the Root Bridge. If it turns out that Managed Switch has the lowest Bridge Identifier, it will become the Root Bridge.

Forward Delay Timer - The Forward Delay can be from 4 to 30 seconds. This is the time any port on the

Managed Switch spends in the listening state while moving from the blocking state to the forwarding state.

Observe the following formulas when setting the above parameters: Max. Age \_ 2 x (Forward Delay - 1 second) Max. Age \_ 2 x (Hello Time + 1 second)

**Port Priority** – A Port Priority can be from 0 to 240. The lower the number, the greater the probability the port will be chosen as the Root Port.

**Port Cost** – A Port Cost can be set from 0 to 20000000. The lower the number, the greater the probability the port will be chosen to forward packets.

#### 3. Illustration of STP

A simple illustration of three switches connected in a loop is depicted in the below diagram. In this example, you can anticipate some major network problems if the STP assistance is not applied.

If switch A broadcasts a packet to switch B, switch B will broadcast it to switch C, and switch C will broadcast it to back to switch A and so on. The broadcast packet will be passed indefinitely in a loop, potentially causing a network failure. In this example, STP breaks the loop by blocking the connection between switch B and C. The decision to block a particular connection is based on the STP calculation of the most current Bridge and Port settings.

Now, if switch A broadcasts a packet to switch C, then switch C will drop the packet at port 2 and the broadcast will end there. Setting-up STP using values other than the defaults, can be complex. Therefore, you are advised to keep the default factory settings and STP will automatically assign root bridges/ports and block loop connections. Influencing STP to choose a particular switch as the root bridge using the Priority setting, or influencing STP to choose a particular port to block using the Port Priority and Port Cost settings is, however, relatively straight forward.





Figure 4-5-2: Before Applying the STA Rules

In this example, only the default STP values are used.



Figure 4-5-3: After Applying the STA Rules



The Managed Switch with the lowest Bridge ID (switch C) was elected the root bridge, and the ports were selected to give a high port cost between switches B and C. The two (optional) Gigabit ports (default port cost = 20,000) on switch A are connected to one (optional) Gigabit port on both switch B and C. The redundant link between switch B and C is deliberately chosen as a 100 Mbps Fast Ethernet link (default port cost = 200,000). Gigabit ports could be used, but the port cost should be increased from the default to ensure that the link between switch B and switch C is the blocked link.

The screen in Figure 4-5-4 appears.

System       STP:              Enable             • Disable             Version:             STP •             Version:             STP •             Parameters Config             • STP Config             • STP Config             • STP Security             Multicast             QoS             Accl             SIMP             Maintenance             SIMP             Logout             Logout             Accl             Subsection             State Config             Logout             Accl             Stream Config             Logout             Accl             Stream Config             Logout             Accl             Stream Config             Logout             Accl             Stream Config             Accl             Stream Config             Logout             Accl             Stream Config             Accl             Accl	FGSW-4840S	STP Config STP Summa	ny l	
System   Switching   VLAN   Spanning Tree   • STP Config   • Port Config   • STP Security   Multicast   QoS   ACL   SNMP   Maintenance   Save Config   Logout   Strict Config Strict Config Strict Config CIST Priority: Strict Config Strict Config CIST Priority: Strict Config CIST Priority: Strict Config Strict Config CIST Priority: CIST Priority: Strict Config Strict Config Strict Config Strict Config Strict Config CIST Priority: Strict Config Strict Config Strict Config CIST Priority: Strict Config Strict Config Strict Config CIST Priority: Strict Config </td <td></td> <td>Global Config</td> <td></td> <td></td>		Global Config		
Switching SIP:   VLAN   Spanning Tree   • STP Config   • Port Config   • MSTP Instance   • STP Security   Multicast   QoS   ACL   SNMP   Maintenance   Save Config   Logout   Apply   Apply   Apply   Apply   Apply   Apply   Apply   Parameters Config CIST Priority:   32768   (0-61440)   Hello Time:   2   sec (1-10)   Max Age:   20   sec (4-30)   TxHoldCount:   5   pps (1-20)   Max Hops:   Apply Help Table The priority: Apply Apply Apply Apply Apply Apply Apply Apply Apply Base Config Logout	System	075		
VLAN       Version:       STP         Spanning Tree       •       STP Config         • STP Config       Parameters Config         • STP Security       CIST Priority:       32768       (0-61440)         • STP Security       Hello Time:       2       sec (1-10)         Multicast       QoS       AcL       Forward Delay:       15       sec (4-30)       Apply         SNMP       Maintenance       Save Config       20       hop (1-40)       Help         Logout	Switching	SIP:	Enable Disable	Apply
Spanning Tree   • STP Config   • Port Config   • MSTP Instance   • STP Security   Multicast   QoS   ACL   SNMP   Maintenance   Save Config	VLAN	Version:	STP 🔻	
STP Config         Port Config         MSTP Instance         STP Security         Multicast         QoS         ACL         SNMP         Maintenance         Save Config	Spanning Tree			
Port Config         MSTP Instance         STP Security         Multicast         QoS         ACL         SNMP         Maintenance         Save Config	STP Config	Parameters Config		
MSTP Instance       CIST Priority:       32768       (0-61440)         • STP Security       Hello Time:       2       sec (1-10)         Multicast       Max Age:       20       sec (6-40)       Apply         QoS       ACL       Forward Delay:       15       sec (4-30)       Help         SNMP       TxHoldCount:       5       pps (1-20)       Help         Maintenance       Max Hops:       20       hop (1-40)	Port Config			
STP Security   Multicast   QoS   ACL   SNMP   Maintenance   Save Config	MSTP Instance	CIST Priority:	32768 (0-61440)	
Multicast       Max Age:       20       sec (6-40)       Apply         ACL       Forward Delay:       15       sec (4-30)       Help         SNMP       TxHoldCount:       5       pps (1-20)         Maintenance       Max Hops:       20       hop (1-40)         Logout       Apply       Apply       Apply	STP Security	Hello Time:	2 sec (1-10)	
QoS     Forward Delay:     15     sec (4-30)     Help       SNMP     TxHoldCount:     5     pps (1-20)       Maintenance     Max Hops:     20     hop (1-40)	Multicast	Max Age:	20 sec (6-40)	
ACL     Forward Delay:     15     sec (4-30)     Help       SNMP     TxHoldCount:     5     pps (1-20)       Maintenance     Max Hops:     20     hop (1-40)	QoS	marrigs.		Apply
SNMP     TxHoldCount:     5     pps (1-20)       Maintenance     Max Hops:     20     hop (1-40)	ACL	Forward Delay:	15 sec (4-30)	Help
Maintenance Max Hops: 20 hop (1-40) Logout	SNMP	TxHoldCount:	5 pps (1-20)	
Save Config	Maintenance	Max Hops:	20 hop (1-40)	
	Save Config	64		
	Logout	10 12		
Copyright © 2014	Copyright © 2014			
	orporation. All rights			

### Figure 4-5-4: Spanning Tree Page Screenshot

This section has the following items:

STP Config	Configure global configuration of spanning tree function.
Port Config	Configure the parameters of the CIST ports for spanning tree function.
MSTP Instance	Configure the parameters of the MSTP Instance for spanning tree function.
STP Security	Configuring protection function for devices can prevent devices from any
	malicious attack against STP features.



# 4.5.1 STP Config

The STP Config function, for global configuration of spanning trees on the Managed Switch, can be implemented on **STP Config** and **STP Summary** pages. The screen in Figure 4-5-5 appears.

PLANET Hetworkley & Communication			
FGSW-4840S	STP Config STP Summa	ry	
System	Global Config	🔘 Enable 🖲 Disable	
Switching VLAN Spanning Tree	Version:	STP T	Apply
STP Config     Port Config	Parameters Config		
<ul> <li>MSTP Instance</li> <li>STP Security</li> </ul>	CIST Priority: Hello Time:	32768 (0-61440) 2 sec (1-10)	
Multicast QoS	Max Age:	20 sec (6-40)	Apply
ACL SNMP	TxHoldCount:	5 pps (1-20)	Help
Maintenance Save Config	Max Hops:	20 hop (1-40)	22
Logout	20 20		
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.			



Object	Description
STP Config	Global configuration of spanning tree on this page.
STP Summary	View the related parameters of Spanning Tree function on this page.



# 4.5.1.1 STP Config

Before configuring spanning trees, it should make clear the roles each Managed Switch plays in each spanning tree instance. Only one Managed Switch can be the root bridge in each spanning tree instance. On this page you can globally configure the spanning tree function and related parameters.

The screen in Figure 4-5-6 appears.

STP Config STP Summary		
Global Config		
STP: Version:	■ Enable ● Disable     STP	Apply
Parameters Config		
CIST Priority:	32768 (0-61440)	
Hello Time:	2 sec (1-10)	
Max Age:	20 sec (6-40)	Apply
Forward Delay:	15 sec (4-30)	Help
TxHoldCount:	5 pps (1-20)	
Max Hops:	20 hop (1-40)	

Figure 4-5-6: STP Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Global Config	
• STP	Select Enable/Disable STP function globally on the Managed Switch.
Version	Select the desired STP version on the Managed Switch.
	STP: Spanning Tree Protocol.
	RSTP: Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol.
	MSTP: Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol.
Parameters Config	
CIST Priority	Enter a value from 0 to 61440 to specify the priority of the Managed Switch for
	comparison in the CIST. CIST priority is an important criterion on determining the
	root bridge. In the same condition, the Managed Switch with the highest priority
	will be chosen as the root bridge. The lower value has the higher priority. The
	default value is 32768 and should be exact divisor of 4096.



Hello Time	Enter a value from 1 to 10 in seconds to specify the interval to send BPDU
	packets. It is used to test the links. $2^*$ (Hello Time + 1) $\leq$ Max Age. The default
	value is 2 seconds.
Max Age	Enter a value from 6 to 40 in seconds to specify the maximum time the Managed
	Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. The
	default value is 20 seconds.
Forward Delay	Enter a value from 4 to 30 in seconds to specify the time for the port to transit its
	state after the network topology is changed. $2^{(Forward Delay-1)} \ge Max Age$ . The
	default value is 15 seconds.
TxHoldCount	Enter a value from 1 to 20 to set the maximum number of BPDU packets
	transmitted per Hello Time interval. The default value is 5pps.
Max Hops	Enter a value from 1 to 40 to set the maximum number of hops that occur in a
	specific region before the BPDU is discarded. The default value is 20 hops.

#### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.

- The forward delay parameter and the network diameter are correlated. A too small forward delay parameter may result in temporary loops. A too large forward delay may cause a network unable to resume the normal state in time. The default value is recommended.
- An adequate hello time parameter can enable the Managed Switch to discover the link failures occurred in the network without occupying too much network resources. A too large hello time parameter may result in normal links being regarded as invalid when packets drop occurred in the links, which in turn result in spanning tree being regenerated. A too small hello time parameter may result in duplicated configuration being sent frequently, which increases the network load of the switches and wastes network resources. The default value is recommended.
  - A too small max age parameter may result in the switches regenerating spanning trees frequently and cause network congestions to be falsely regarded as link problems. A too large max age parameter result in the switches unable to find the link problems in time, which in turn handicaps spanning trees being regenerated in time and makes the network less adaptive. The default value is recommended.
- If the TxHold Count parameter is too large, the number of MSTP packets being sent in each hello time may be increased with occupying too much network resources. The default value is recommended.



# 4.5.1.2 STP Summary

This page allows viewing the related parameters of Spanning Tree function; the screen in Figure 4-5-7 appears.

TP Config	STP Summary	
STP Sum	marv	
STP	Status:	Disable
STP	Version:	
Loca	al Bridge:	
Root	t Bridge:	
Exte	ernal Path Cost:	
Regi	ion Root:	
Inter	mal Path Cost:	
Desi	ignated Bridge:	
Root	t Port:	
Late	st TC Time:	
TC C	Count:	0
MSTP Inst	tance Summary	
Insta	ance ID	1 •
Insta	ince Status:	Disable
Loca	I Bridge:	
Regi	on Root:	
Inter	nal Path Cost:	
Desi	gnated Bridge:	
Root	Port:	
Late	st TC Time:	
TC C	Count:	
		Refresh

Figure 4-5-7: STP Summary Page Screenshot

Object	Description
STP Summary	
STP Status	Displays the current STP Status.
STP Version	Displays the current STP version.
Local Bridge	Displays local bridge information.
Root Bridge	Displays root bridge information.
External Path Cost	Displays external path cost information.



Region Root	Displays region root information.
Internal Path Cost	Displays internal path cost information.
Designated Bridge	Displays designated bridge information.
Root Port	Displays root port information.
Latest TC Time	Displays the latest TC time information.
TC Count	Displays TC Count time information.
MSTP Instance Summary	
Instance ID	Displays instance ID information.
Instance Status	Displays instance status information.
Local Bridge	Displays local bridge information.
Region Root	Displays region root information.
Internal Path Cost	Displays internal path cost information.
Designated Bridge	Displays designated bridge information.
Root Port	Displays root port information.
Latest TC Time	Displays the latest TC time information.
TC Count	Displays TC Count time information.

### Button

Refresh : Click to refresh STP Summary status.



# 4.5.2 Port Config

The Port Config functions for per port configuration of spanning trees on the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-5-8 appears.

G5W-48405	Part Config													
	Fot C	oño												
ivstem											Port	1	Salart	
witching	Colore	Dart	Gentur	Departu	Evel Date Case		IntEnth Cast	Edan Ba	+ D20 Line	10 havin	STP Version	Dart Data	Post Status	1.4
LAN	Gereer	Fun	Disable =	Finany	Extrain cost		mo-por cust	Euger-o	- P2F Dik	Theorem -	OTF VERSION	Pun Puic	Puncolaus	
anning Tree	-		Tionedia +	470	A		The share	LTRAFOR	- Anio -	Continenge •				
STP Config			Disade .	1/0	Auto	Ann	Disatile.	Auro	-			-		
Port Config	100		LANADIA	1/8	Auto	Anto	Decker	Auto	22	1.5	2002			
MSTP Instance	1.2	1	Disable	120	/vuto	74000	Lisable	/000						
STP Security	- 0.0	4	LAIKADIA	128	Anto	Auto	Disette	Auto	100		1000		10.20	
ulticast	-	2	Disable	120	JUID	/ uto	Disable	70000						
nS .			Disatie	128	Auto	Auto	Disette	Auto						
6L	-	1	Disable	120	/vuto	74000	Lisable	74000						
MP	0.0	- 4	District	128	Add	Auto	Disette	Auto	_	_		-		
aintenance	-	3	Disable	120	PUID	/ Ling	Lisable	/шса						
ave Config	- 10	-10	Disable	128	Auto	Anto	Disette	Auto	_	-	1500	-		
		11	Disable	128	Puto	Auto	Lisable	/100						
igout 💫	101	12	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disatie	Auto	-	-	0,000,0	-		
		13	Disable	128	Auto	/PUE0	Disable	,AU00	5		Salar		-	
	- 10/	14	Disable	120	Auto	A000	Disable	A000			12000		0.000	
		15	Disable	128	PUID	AURO	Lisable	AUKS		5	1.77	-		
							Apply	Refresh	Help					
Copyright @ 2014														

### Figure 4-5-8: Port Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Config	Configure the parameters of the CIST ports for spanning tree function.



# 4.5.2.1 Port Config

This page allows to configure the parameters of the CIST ports for spanning tree function on the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-5-9 appears.

Port Co	onfig												
										Port		Select	
Select	Port	Status	Priority	ExtPath Cost		IntPath Cost	Edge Port	P2P Link	MCheck	STP Version	Port Role	Port Status	LA
		Disable 🔻					Disable 🔻	Auto 🔻	Unchange 🔻				
	1	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	2	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	3	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	4	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	5	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	6	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	7	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	8	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	9	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	10	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	11	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	12	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	13	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	14	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
	15	Disable	128	Auto	Auto	Disable	Auto						
						Apply	Refresh	Help					

### Figure 4-5-9: STP Port Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Config	
Port Select	Click the Select button to quick-select the corresponding port based on the port
	number entered.
Select	Select the desired port for STP configuration. It is multi-optional.
Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.
Status	Select Enable /Disable STP function for the desired port.
Priority	Enter a value from 0 to 240 divisible by 16. Port priority is an important criterion
	on determining if the port connected to this port will be chosen as the root port.
	The lower value has the higher priority.
ExtPath Cost	ExtPath Cost is used to choose the path and calculate the path costs of ports in
	different MST regions. It is an important criterion on determining the root port.
	The lower value has the higher priority.
IntPath Cost	IntPath Cost is used to choose the path and calculate the path costs of ports in
	an MST region. It is an important criterion on determining the root port. The lower
	value has the higher priority.
Edge Port	Select Enable/Disable Edge Port. The edge port can transit its state from
	blocking to forwarding rapidly without waiting for forward delay.



• P2P Link	Select the P2P link status. If the two ports in the P2P link are root port or		
	designated port, they can transit their states to forwarding rapidly to reduce the		
	unnecessary forward delay.		
MCheck	Select Enable to perform MCheck operation on the port. Unchange means no		
	MCheck operation.		
STP Version	Displays the STP version of the port.		
Port Role	Displays the role of the port played in the STP Instance.		
	• Root Port: Indicates the port that has the lowest path cost from this bridge to the Root Bridge and forwards packets to the root.		
	• Designated Port: Indicates the port that forwards packets to a downstream network segment or Managed Switch.		
	• Master Port: Indicates the port that connects a MST region to the common root. The path from the master port to the common root is the shortest path between this MST region and the common root.		
	• Alternate Port: Indicates the port that can be a backup port of a root or master port.		
	<ul> <li>Backup Port: Indicates the port that is the backup port of a designated port.</li> <li>Disabled: Indicates the port that is not participating in the STP.</li> </ul>		
	• Forwarding: In this status the port can receive/forward data, receive/send BPDU packets as well as learn MAC address.		
	• Learning: In this status the port can receive/send BPDU packets and learn MAC address.		
	• Blocking: In this status the port can only receive BPDU packets.		
	• Disconnected: In this status the port is not participating in the STP.		
Port Status	Displays the working status of the port.		
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.		



Configure the ports connected directly to terminals as edge ports and enable the BPDU protection function as well. This not only enables these ports to transit to forwarding state rapidly but also secures your network.

All the links of ports in a LAG can be configured as point-to-point links..



### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Refresh . Click to refresh Port Config page.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.5.3 MSTP Instance

The MSTP combines VLANs and spanning tree together via VLAN-to-instance mapping table (VLAN-to-spanning-tree mapping). By adding MSTP instances, it binds several VLANs to an instance to realize the load balance based on instances.

Only when the switches have the same MST region name, MST region revision and VLAN-to-Instance mapping table, the switches can be regarded as in the same MST region.

The MSTP Instance function can be implemented on the **Region Config**, **Instance Config** and **Instance Port Config** pages; the screen in Figure 4-5-10 appears.

	A SA		
FGSW-4840S	Region Config Instance	Config Instance Port Config	
	Region Config		
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree • STP Config • Port Config	Region Name: Revision:	00-30-4f-b4-3b-83 0 (0-65535)	Apply Help
STP Instance     STP Security     Multicast     QoS     ACL     SNMP			
Maintenance Save Config Logout			

Figure 4-5-10: MSTP Instance Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Region Config	Configure the name and revision of the MST region on this page.
Instance Config	A property of MST region and it is used to describe the VLAN to Instance
	mapping configuration.
Instance Port Config	Configure the parameters of the ports in different instance IDs as well as view
	status of the ports in the specified instance.



# 4.5.3.1 Region Config

This page allows configuring the name and revision of the MST region on the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-5-11 appears.

Region Config	Instance Config	Instance Port Config	
Region Conf	g		
Region	Name:	00-30-4f-b4-3b-83	Apply
Revisior	li.	0 (0-65535)	Help

Figure 4-5-11: Region Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Region Config		
Region Name	Create a name for MST region identification using up to 32 characters.	
Revision	Enter the revision from 0 to 65535 for MST region identification.	

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.5.3.2 Instance Config

The Instance Configuration, a property of MST region, is used to describe the VLAN to Instance mapping configuration. Assign VLAN to different instances appropriate to needs. Every instance is a VLAN group independent of other instances and CIST. The screen in Figure 4-5-12 appears.

gion Config	Instanc	e Config	Instance Port Config		
Instance T	able				
				Instance ID	Select
Select	Instance	Status	Priority	VLAN ID	
	1	Disable	32768		Clear
	2	Disable	32768		Clear
	3	Disable	32768		Clear
	4	Disable	32768		Clear
	5	Disable	32768		Clear
	6	Disable	32768		Clear
	7	Disable	32768		Clear
	8	Disable	32768		Clear
	CIST	Enable	32768	1-4094,	
			Apply	Help	
VLAN-Inst	ance Mappir	ıg			
VLAN	ID:			(1-4094)	
Instan	ce ID:			(0-8, 0 is the cist)	Apply
Note:	of input VLA	N ID should	l be like '1 -3 -47 -11-30	in the range from 1 to 4094	

Figure 4-5-12: Instance Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Instance Table	
Instance ID Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quickly select the corresponding Instance ID based on the ID number you entered.
Select	Select the desired Instance ID for configuration. It is multi-optional.
Instance	Displays Instance ID of the Managed Switch.
Status	Select Enable/Disable the instance.
Priority	Enter the priority of the Managed Switch in the instance. It is an important



	criterion on determining if the Managed Switch will be chosen as the root bridge
	in the specific instance.
• VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID which belongs to the corresponding instance ID. After
	modification here, the previous VLAN ID will be cleared and mapped to the CIST.
• Clear	Click the <b>Clear</b> button to clear up all VLAN IDs from the instance ID. The cleared
	VLAN ID will be automatically mapped to the CIST.
VLAN-Instance Mapping	

·	
• VLAN ID	Enter the desired VLAN ID. After modification here, the new VLAN ID will be
	added to the corresponding instance ID and the previous VLAN ID won't be replaced.
Instance ID	Enter the corresponding instance ID.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.5.3.3 Instance Port Config

A port can play different roles in different spanning tree instance. On this page, it allows to configure the parameters of the ports in different instance IDs as well as view status of the ports in the specified instance; the screen in Figure 4-5-13 appears.

Port Config	I						
Instance I	D [	1 🔻			Port	Select	
Select	Port	Priority	Path Cost	Port Role	Port Status	LAG	
	1	128	Auto				
	2	128	Auto				
	3	128	Auto				
	4	128	Auto				
	5	128	Auto				
	6	128	Auto				
	7	128	Auto				
	8	128	Auto				
	9	128	Auto				
	10	128	Auto				
	11	128	Auto				
	12	128	Auto				
	13	128	Auto				
	14	128	Auto				
	15	128	Auto				-
			Apply Refre	sh Help	]		

### Figure 4-5-13: Instance Port Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Config	
Instance ID	Select the desired instance ID for its port configuration.
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quick-select the corresponding port based on the port number you entered.
Select	Select the desired port to specify its priority and path cost. It is multi-optional.
• Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.



• Priority	Enter the priority of the port in the instance. It is an important criterion on determining if the port connected to this port will be chosen as the root port.
Path Cost	Path Cost is used to choose the path and calculate the path costs of ports in an MST region. It is an important criterion on determining the root port. The lower value has the higher priority.
Port Role	Displays the role of the port played in the MSTP Instance.
Port Status	Displays the working status of the port.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.



The port status of one port in different spanning tree instances can be different.

### Buttons



: Click to apply changes.

Refresh

Click to refresh current web page.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.5.4 STP Security

Configuring protection function for devices can prevent devices from any malicious attack against STP features. The STP Security function can be implemented on **Port Protect** and **TC Protect** pages. Port Protect function is to prevent the devices from any malicious attack against STP features. The screen in Figure 4-5-14 appears.

5W-48405									
1000	Port Pr	otect							
tem							Port	Select	
ching	Select	Port	Loop Protect	Root Protect	TC Protect	BPDU Protect	BPDU Filter	LAG	
N			Disable <b>T</b>	Disable •	Disable •	Disable •	Disable •		
ning Tree		1	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		h.
P Config		2	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
rt Config		3	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
TP Instance		4	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
P Security		5	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
icast		6	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
		7	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
		8	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
P		9	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
tenance		10	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
Config		11	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
		12	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
ut		13	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
		14	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable		
		15	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	,	
yright © 2014 IET Technology				Ap	pply He	elp			_



Object	Description
Port Protect	Configure the port protect function on this page.
TC Protect	Configure the TC protect function on this page.



### 4.5.4.1 Port Protect

This page allows to configure loop protect feature, root protect feature, TC protect feature, BPDU protect feature and BPDU filter feature for ports. Suggested to enable corresponding protection feature for the qualified ports; the screen in Figure 4-5-15 appears.

Port Pr	otect						
						Port	Select
Select	Port	Loop Protect	Root Protect	TC Protect	BPDU Protect	BPDU Filter	LAG
		Disable 🔻	Disable 🔻	Disable 🔻	Disable 🔻	Disable 🔻	
	1	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	2	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	3	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	4	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	5	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	6	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	7	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	8	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	9	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	10	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	11	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	12	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	13	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	14	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	
	15	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	

Figure 4-5-15: Port Protect Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Protect	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quick-select the corresponding port based on the port number entered.
Select	Select the desired port for port protect configuration. It is multi-optional.
• Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.
Loop Protect	Loop Protect is to prevent the loops in the network brought by recalculating STP



	because of link failures and network congestions.
Root Protect	Root Protect is to prevent wrong network topology change caused by the role change of the current legal root bridge.
TC Protect	TC Protect is to prevent the decrease of the performance and stability of the Managed Switch brought by continuously removing MAC address entries upon receiving TC-BPDUs in the STP network.
BPDU Protect	BPDU Protect is to prevent the edge port from being attacked by maliciously created BPDUs.
BPDU Filter	BPDU Filter is to prevent BPDUs flood in the STP network.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.

### Buttons

Apply

: Click to apply changes.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.5.4.2 TC Protect

When TC Protect is enabled for the port on **Port Protect** page, the TC threshold and TC protect cycle need to be configured on this page; the screen in Figure 4-5-16 appears.

Port Protect TC	Protect		
TC Protect			
TC Thresho TC Protect	ıld: 20 Cycle: 5	packet (1-100) sec (1-10)	Apply Help



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
TC Protect	
TC Threshold	Enter a number from 1 to 100. It is the maximum number of the TC-BPDUs received by the Managed Switch in a TC Protect Cycle. The default value is 20
TC Protect Cycle	Enter a value from 1 to 10 to specify the TC Protect Cycle. The default value is 5.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help . Click to diaplay hol

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.6 Multicast

# **Multicast Overview**

In the network, packets are sent in three modes: unicast, broadcast and multicast. In unicast, the source server sends separate copy information to each receiver. When a large number of users require this information, the server must send many pieces of information with the same content to the users. Therefore, large bandwidth will be occupied. In broadcast, the system transmits information to all users in a network. Any user in the network can receive the information, no matter the information is needed or not.

Point-to-multipoint multimedia business, such as video conferences and VoD (video-on-demand), plays an important part in the information transmission field. Suppose a point to multi-point service is required, unicast is suitable for networks with sparsely users, whereas broadcast is suitable for networks with densely distributed users. When the number of users requiring this information is not certain, unicast and broadcast deliver a low efficiency. Multicast solves this problem. It can deliver a high efficiency to send data in the point to multi-point service, which can save large bandwidth and reduce the network load. In multicast, the packets are transmitted in the following way as shown in Figure 4-6-1.



Figure 4-6-1: Information Transmission in the Multicast Mode

### Features of multicast:

- 1. The number of receivers is not certain. Usually point-to-multipoint transmission is needed;
- 2. Multiple users receiving the same information form a multicast group. The multicast information sender just need to send the information to the network device once;
- 3. Each user can join and leave the multicast group at any time;
- 4. Real time is highly demanded and certain packets drop is allowed.



#### **Multicast Address**

1. Multicast IP Address:

As specified by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority), Class D IP addresses are used as destination addresses of multicast packets. The multicast IP addresses range from 224.0.0.0~239.255.255.255. The following table displays the range and description of several special multicast IP addresses.

Multicast IP address range	Description
224.0.0.0~224.0.0.255	Reserved multicast addresses for routing protocols and other network protocols
224.0.1.0~224.0.1.255	Addresses for video conferencing
239.0.0.0~239.255.255.255	Local management multicast addresses, which are used in the local network only

### Table 4-6-1: Range of the Special Multicast IP

#### 2. Multicast MAC Address:

When a unicast packet is transmitted in an Ethernet network, the destination MAC address is the MAC address of the receiver. When a multicast packet is transmitted in an Ethernet network, the destination is not a receiver but a group with uncertain number of members, so a multicast MAC address, a logical MAC address, is needed to be used as the destination address. As stipulated by IANA, the high-order 24 bits of a multicast MAC address begins with 01-00-5E while the low-order 23 bits of a multicast MAC address are the low-order 23 bits of the multicast IP address. The mapping relationship is described as Figure 4-6-2.





The high-order 4 bits of the IP multicast address are 1110, identifying the multicast group. Only 23 bits of the remaining low-order 28 bits are mapped to a multicast MAC address. In that way, 5 bits of the IP multicast address is not utilized. As a result, 32 IP multicast addresses are mapped to the same MAC addresses.

### Multicast Address Table

The Managed Switch is forwarding multicast packets based on the multicast address table. As the transmission of multicast packets can not span the VLAN, the first part of the multicast address table is VLAN ID, based on which the received multicast packets are forwarded in the VLAN owning the receiving port. The multicast address table is not mapped to an egress port but a group port list. When forwarding a multicast packet, the Managed Switch looks up the multicast address table based on the destination multicast address of the multicast packet. If the corresponding entry can not be found in the table, the Managed Switch will broadcast the packet in the VLAN owning the receiving port. If the corresponding entry can be found in the table, it



indicates that the destination address should be a group port list, so the Managed Switch will duplicate this multicast data and deliver each port one copy. The general format of the multicast address table is described as Figure 4-6-3 below.

VLAN ID	Multicast IP	Port		
Figure 4.6.2: Multisest Address Table				

Figure 4-6-3: Multicast Address Table

### **IGMP Snooping**

In the network, the hosts apply to the near Router for joining (leaving) a multicast group by sending IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) messages. When the up-stream device forwards down the multicast data, the Managed Switch is responsible for sending them to the hosts. IGMP Snooping is a multicast control mechanism, which can be used on the Managed Switch for dynamic registration of the multicast group. The Managed Switch, running IGMP Snooping, manages and controls the multicast group via listening to and processing the IGMP messages transmitted between the hosts and the multicast router, thereby effectively prevents multicast groups being broadcasted in the network.

The Multicast is mainly for multicast management configuration of the Managed Switch, the screen in Figure 4-6-4 appears.

PLANET Hetwenking & Communication	
FGSW-4840S	Snooping Config Port Config VLAN Config Multicast VLAN
	Global Config
System	IGMP Snooping: O Enable O Disable
Switching VLAN	Unknown Multicast:   Forward  Discard
Spanning Tree	
Multicast	IGMP Snooping Status
<ul> <li>IGMP Snooping</li> </ul>	Description Member
<ul> <li>Multicast IP</li> </ul>	Enabled Port
<ul> <li>Multicast Filter</li> </ul>	Enabled VLAN
Packet Statistics     QoS	Refresh Help
ACL	
SNMP	NOTE:
Maintenance	GIVIP Shooping will take effect only when Global Config, Port Config and VLAN Config are all enabled.
Save Config	

Figure 4-6-4: Multicast Page Screenshot

This section has the following items:

IGMP Snooping	Configure IGMP Snooping function of Managed Switch.
Multicast IP	Configure Multicast IP function of Managed Switch.
Multicast Filter	Configure Multicast Filtering function of Managed Switch.
Packet Statistics	Display Multicast packet statistics of Managed Switch.



### 4.6.1 IGMP Snooping

#### **IGMP Snooping Process**

The Managed Switch running IGMP Snooping, listens to the IGMP messages transmitted between the host and the router, and tracks the IGMP messages and the registered port. When receiving IGMP report message, the Managed Switch adds the port to the multicast address table; when the Managed Switch listens to IGMP leave message from the host, the router sends the Group-Specific Query message of the port to check if other hosts need this multicast, if yes, the router will receive IGMP report message; if no, the router will receive no response from the hosts and the Managed Switch will remove the port from the multicast address table. The router regularly sends IGMP query messages. After receiving the IGMP query messages, the Managed Switch will remove the port from the multicast address table if the Managed Switch receives no IGMP report message from the host within a period of time.

#### **IGMP Messages**

The Managed Switch running IGMP Snooping processes the IGMP messages of different types as follows.

#### 1. IGMP Query Message

IGMP query message, sent by the router, falls into two types, IGMP general query message and IGMP group-specific-query message. The router regularly sends IGMP general message to query if the multicast groups contain any member. When receiving IGMP leave message, the receiving port of the router will send IGMP group-specific-query message to the multicast group and the Managed Switch will forward IGMP group-specific-query message to check if other members in the multicast group of the port need this multicast.

When receiving IGMP general query message, the Managed Switch will forward them to all other ports in the VLAN owning the receiving port. The receiving port will be processed: if the receiving port is not a router port yet, it will be added to the router port list with its router port time specified; if the receiving port is already a router port, its router port time will be directly reset.

When receiving IGMP group-specific-query message, the Managed Switch will send the group-specific query message to the members of the multicast group being queried.

### 2. IGMP Report Message

IGMP report message is sent by the host when it applies for joining a multicast group or responses to the IGMP query message from the router.

When receiving IGMP report message, the Managed Switch will send the report message via the router port in the VLAN as well as analyze the message to get the address of the multicast group the host applies for joining. The receiving port will be processed: if the receiving port is a new member port, it will be added to the multicast address table with its member port time specified; if the receiving port is already a member port, its member port time will be directly reset.

### 3. IGMP Leave Message

The host, running IGMPv1, does not send IGMP leave message when leaving a multicast group, as a result, the Managed Switch can not get the leave information of the host momentarily. However, after leaving the multicast group, the host does not send IGMP report message any more, so the Managed Switch will remove the port from the corresponding multicast address table when its member port time times out. The host, running IGMPv2 or IGMPv3, sends IGMP leave message when leaving a multicast group to inform the multicast router of its leaving.

When receiving IGMP leave message, the Managed Switch will forward IGMP group-specific-query message to check if other members in the multicast group of the port need this multicast and reset the member port time to the leave time. When the leave time times out, the Managed Switch will remove the port from the corresponding multicast group. If no other member is in the



group after the port is removed, the Managed Switch will send IGMP leave message to the router and remove the whole multicast group.

### **IGMP Snooping Fundamentals**

1. Ports

Router Port: Indicates the Managed Switch port directly connected to the multicast router.

Member Port: Indicates a Managed Switch port connected to a multicast group member.

2. Timers

**Router Port Time:** Within the time, if the Managed Switch does not receive IGMP query message from the router port, it will consider this port is not a router port any more. The default value is 300 seconds.

**Member Port Time:** Within the time, if the Managed Switch does not receive IGMP report message from the member port, it will consider this port is not a member port any more. The default value is 260 seconds.

**Leave Time:** Indicates the interval between the Managed Switch receiving a leave message from a host and the Managed Switch removing the host from the multicast groups. The default value is 1 second.

The IGMP Snooping function can be implemented on **Snooping Config**, **Port Config**, **VLAN Config** and **Multicast VLAN** pages. The screen in Figure 4-6-5 appears.

FGSW-4840S	Snooping Config Port Config VLAN Config Multicast VLAN
	Global Config
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree	IGMP Snooping: O Enable O Disable Apply
Multicast	IGMP Snooping Status
<ul> <li>IGMP Snooping</li> </ul>	Description Member
Multicast IP	Enabled Port
• Multicast Filter	Enabled VLAN
Packet Statistics QoS ACL	Refresh Help
SNMP	Note:
Maintenance	IGMP Snooping will take effect only when Global Config, Port Config and VLAN Config are all enabled.
Save Config	

Figure 4-6-5: IGMP Snooping Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Snooping Config	Configure the IGMP Snooping function on this page.
Port Config	Configure the per port IGMP feature on this page.
VLAN Config	Configure different IGMP parameters for different VLANs on this page.
Multicast VLAN	Configure the Multicast VLAN function on this page.



# 4.6.1.1 Snooping Config

To configure the IGMP Snooping on the Managed Switch, please firstly configure IGMP global configuration and related parameters on this page. If the multicast address of the received multicast data is not in the multicast address table, the Managed Switch will broadcast the data in the VLAN. When Unknown Multicast Discard feature is enabled, the Managed Switch drops the received unknown multicast so as to save the bandwidth and enhance the process efficiency of the system. Please configure this feature appropriate to your needs; the screen in Figure 4-6-6 appears.

Global Config				
IGMP Snoop	ing: 🛛 🔍	Enable 💿 Disabl	e	
Unknown Mu	lticast: 💿	Forward O Discar	rd	Apply
IGMP Snooping	Status			
Description			Member	
Enabled Port				
Enabled VLAN				
		Refresh	Help	

#### Figure 4-6-6: Snooping Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Global Config	
IGMP Snooping	Select Enable/Disable IGMP Snooping function globally on the Managed Switch.
Unknown Multicast	Select the operation for the Managed Switch to process unknown multicast, Forward or Discard.
IGMP Snooping Status	
Description	Displays IGMP Snooping status.
Member	Displays the member of the corresponding status.

### Buttons

Apply : Click

Help

: Click to apply changes.

Refresh . Click to refresh current web page.

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.6.1.2 Port Config

This page allows to configure the per port IGMP feature of Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-6-7 appears.

Snooping Config	Port Config	VLAN Config Multica	ast VLAN	
Port Config				
			Port	Select
Select	Port	IGMP Snooping	Fast Leave	LAG
		Disable 🔻	Disable 🔻	
	1	Disable	Disable	^
	2	Disable	Disable	
	3	Disable	Disable	
	4	Disable	Disable	
	5	Disable	Disable	
	6	Disable	Disable	
	7	Disable	Disable	
	8	Disable	Disable	
	9	Disable	Disable	
	10	Disable	Disable	
	11	Disable	Disable	
	12	Disable	Disable	•
		Apply	Help	

Figure 4-6-7: Port Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Port Config	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port number entered.
Select	Select the desired port for IGMP Snooping feature configuration. It is multi-optional.
• Port	Displays the port of the Managed Switch.
IGMP Snooping	Select Enable/Disable IGMP Snooping for the desired port.
Fast Leave	Select Enable/Disable Fast Leave feature for the desired port. If Fast Leave is
	enabled for a port, the Managed Switch will immediately remove this port from the
	multicast group upon receiving IGMP leave messages.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.



Fast Leave on the port is effective only when the host supports IGMPv2 or IGMPv3.

When both Fast Leave feature and Unknown Multicast Discard feature are enabled, the leaving of a user connected to a port owning multi-user will result in the other users intermitting the multicast business.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.	
Help: Click to display help web page.	

# 4.6.1.3 VLAN Config

The multicast groups established by IGMP Snooping are based on VLANs, this page provides to configure different IGMP parameters for different VLANs; the screen in Figure 4-6-8 appears.

ooping Config Port Config	VLAN Config Multicast VLAN
VLAN Config	
VLAN ID:	(1-4094)
Router Port Time:	300 sec (60-600, recommended: 300)
Member Port Time:	260 sec (60-600, recommended: 260) Create
Leave Time:	1 sec (1-30, recommended: 1)
Static Router Ports:	(Format: 1-3,6,8)
VLAN Table	
	VLAN ID Select
Select VLAN ID Router Po	t Time Member Port Time Leave Time Router Port
	Apply Delete Help
Note: The settings here will be invalid	when multicast VLAN is enabled.

Figure 4-6-8: VLAN Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
VLAN Config	
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID to enable IGMP Snooping for the desired VLAN.
Router Port Time	Specify the aging time of the router port. Within this time, if the Managed Switch
	doesn't receive IGMP query message from the router port, it will consider this port
	is not a router port any more.
Member Port Time	Specify the aging time of the member port. Within this time, if the Managed Switch
	doesn't receive IGMP report message from the member port, it will consider this
	port is not a member port any more.
Leave Time	Specify the interval between the Managed Switch receiving a leave message from
	a host and the Managed Switch removing the host from the multicast groups.


Static Router Ports	Select the static router port which is mainly used in the network with stable
	topology.
VLAN Table	
VLAN ID Select	Click the Select button to quick-select the corresponding VLAN ID based on the ID
	number you entered.
Select	Select the desired VLAN ID for configuration. It is multi-optional.
VLAN ID	Displays the VLAN ID.
Router Port Time	Displays the router port time of the VLAN.
Member Port Time	Displays the member port time of the VLAN.
Leave Time	Displays the leave time of the VLAN.
Router Port	Displays the router port of the VLAN.



The settings here will be invalid when multicast VLAN is enabled.

### Buttons

Create : Click to create a new VLAN configuration for IGMP Snooping.

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Delete

Click to delete VLAN configuration from VLAN table.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



### 4.6.1.4 Multicast VLAN

In old multicast transmission mode, when users in different VLANs apply for join the same multicast group, the multicast router will duplicate this multicast information and deliver each VLAN owning a receiver one copy. This mode wastes a lot of bandwidth.

The issue above can be solved by configuring a multicast VLAN. By adding Managed Switch ports to the multicast VLAN and enabling IGMP Snooping, you can make users in different VLANs share the same multicast VLAN. This saves the bandwidth since multicast streams are transmitted only within the multicast VLAN and also guarantees security because the multicast VLAN is isolated from user VLANS.

Before configuring a multicast VLAN, you should firstly configure a VLAN as multicast VLAN and add the corresponding ports to the VLAN on the **802.1Q VLAN** page. If the multicast VLAN is enabled, the multicast configuration for other VLANs on the **VLAN Config** page will be invalid, that is, the multicast streams will be transmitted only within the multicast VLAN. The screen in Figure 4-6-9 appears.

Snooping Config Port Config	VLAN Config	Multicast VLAN	
Multicast VLAN			
Multicast VLAN:	Enable I Dis	able	
VLAN ID:		(2-4094)	
Router Port Time:		sec (60-600, recommended: 300)	Apply
Member Port Time:		sec (60-600, recommended: 260)	Help
Leave Time:		sec (1-30, recommended: 1)	
Router Ports:		(Format: 1-3,6,8)	
Note: 1. All IGMP packet will be prod 2. The Multicast VLAN won't ta	essed in the Multicas ike effect unless you	st VLAN after Multicast VLAN is created. first complete the configuration on the VLA	N Config page.

### Figure 4-6-9: Multicast VLAN Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Multicast VLAN	
Multicast VLAN	Select Enable/Disable Multicast VLAN feature.
• VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID of the multicast VLAN.
Router Port Time	Specify the aging time of the router port. Within this time, if the Managed Switch
	doesn't receive IGMP query message from the router port, it will consider this port





	is not a router port any more.
Member Port Time	Specify the aging time of the member port. Within this time, if the Managed Switch
	doesn't receive IGMP report message from the member port, it will consider this
	port is not a member port any more.
Leave Time	Specify the interval between the Managed Switch receiving a leave message from a
	host, and the Managed Switch removing the host from the multicast groups.
Router Ports	Select the static router port which is mainly used in the network with stable
	topology.



The router port should be in the multicast VLAN, otherwise the member ports cannot receive multicast streams.

The Multicast VLAN won't take effect unless you first complete the configuration for the corresponding VLAN owning the port on the **802.1Q VLAN** page.



It is recommended to choose GENERAL as the link type of the member ports in the multicast VLAN.

After a multicast VLAN is created, all the IGMP packets will be processed only within the multicast VLAN.

#### Buttons





### 4.6.2 Multicast IP

In a network, receivers can join different multicast groups appropriate to their needs. The Managed Switch forwards multicast streams based on multicast address table. The Multicast IP can be implemented on **Multicast IP Table**, **Static Multicast IP** page. The screen in Figure 4-6-10 appears.

PLANET Retworking & Contribunization				
FGSW-4840S	Multicast IP Table Static	Multicast IP		
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree Multicast • IGMP Snooping	Search Option Multicast IP: VLAN ID: Port: Type:	(Form) (1-4) 1 T All Static Dyna	mat: 225.0.0.1) 094) amic	Search
Multicast IP     Multicast Filter     Packet Statistics     QoS     ACL     SNMP	Multicast IP Table Multicast IP	VLAN ID Refresh He	Forward Port	Туре
Maintenance Save Config Logout	i otal Multicast IP: U			
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.				

### Figure 4-6-10: Multicast IP Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Multicast IP Table	View the multicast IP table on the Managed Switch.
Static Multicast IP	Configure the static multicast IP function on this page.



### 4.6.2.1 Multicast IP Table

In a network, receivers can join different multicast groups appropriate to their needs, the Managed Switch forwards multicast streams based on multicast address table. The Multicast IP can be implemented on **Multicast IP Table**, **Static Multicast IP** page; the screen in Figure 4-6-11 appears.

Iulticast IP Table Static	Multicast IP		
Search Option			
Multicast IP:		(Format: 225.0.0.1)	
VLAN ID:		(1-4094)	
Port:	1 🔻		Search
Type:	🖲 All 🔍 Stati	ic 🔍 Dynamic	
Multicast IP Table			
Multicast IP	VLAN ID	Forward Port	Туре
	Refres	h Help	
Total Multicast IP: 0			

Figure 4-6-11: Multicast IP Table Page Screenshot

The	nade	includes	the	following	fields:
THE	paye	includes	uic	lonowing	noius.

Object	Description
Search Option	
Multicast IP	Enter the multicast IP address the desired entry must carry.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID the desired entry must carry.
Port	Select the port number the desired entry must carry.
• Туре	Select the type the desired entry must carry.
	All: Displays all multicast IP entries.
	<ul> <li>Static: Displays all static multicast IP entries.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Dynamic: Displays all dynamic multicast IP entries.</li> </ul>
Multicast IP Table	
Multicast IP	Displays multicast IP address.
VLAN ID	Displays the VLAN ID of the multicast group.
Forward Port	Displays the forward port of the multicast group.
• Туре	Displays the type of the multicast IP.





If the configuration on VLAN Config page and multicast VLAN page is changed, the Managed Switch will clear up the dynamic multicast addresses in multicast address table and learn new addresses.

### Buttons



### 4.6.2.2 Static Multicast IP

The Static Multicast IP table isolated from dynamic multicast group and multicast filter is not learned by IGMP Snooping. It can enhance the quality and security for information transmission in some fixed multicast groups; the screen in Figure 4-6-12 appears.

Multicast IP Table Static Mult	icast IP
Create Static Multicast	
Multicast IP:	(Format: 225.0.0.1)
VLAN ID:	(1-4094)
Forward Port:	(Format: 1-3,6,8)
Search Option	
Search Option:	All   Search
Static Multicast IP Table	
Select Multicast IP	VLAN ID Forward Port
	All Delete Help
Total Static Multicast IP: 0	

#### Figure 4-6-12: Static Multicast IP Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Create Static Multicast	
Multicast IP	Enter static multicast IP address.



• VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID of the multicast IP.
Forward Port	Enter the forward port of the multicast group.
Search Option	
Search Option	Select the rules for displaying multicast IP table to find the desired entries quickly.
	• All: Displays all static multicast IP entries.
	• Multicast IP: Enter the multicast IP address the desired entry must carry.
	• VLAN ID: Enter the VLAN ID the desired entry must carry.
	• <b>Port:</b> Enter the port number the desired entry must carry.
Static Multicast IP Table	

Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding static multicast IP. It is
	multi-optional.
Multicast IP	Displays the multicast IP.
VLAN ID	Displays the VLAN ID of the multicast group.
Forward Port	Displays the forward port of the multicast group.

#### Buttons





## .4.6.3 Multicast Filter

When IGMP Snooping is enabled, you can specified the multicast IP-range the ports can join so as to restrict users ordering multicast programs via configuring multicast filter rules.

When applying for a multicast group, the host will send IGMP report message. After receiving the report message, the Managed Switch will firstly check the multicast filter rules configured for the receiving port. If the port can be added to the multicast group, it will be added to the multicast address table; if the port can not be added to the multicast group, the Managed Switch will drop the IGMP report message. In that way, the multicast streams will not be transmitted to this port, which allows you to control hosts joining the multicast group. The screen in Figure 4-6-13 appears.

PLANET Hetworking & Communication	
FGSW-4840S	IP-Range Port Filter
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree Multicast • IGMP Snooping • Multicast IP • Multicast Filter • Packet Statistics QoS ACL SNMP Maintenance Save Config Logout	Create IP-Range         IP-Range ID:       (1-30)         Start Multicast IP:       (Format: 225.0.0.1)         End Multicast IP:       (Format: 225.0.0.1)         IP-Range Table       IP-Range ID         Select       IP-Range ID
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.	

Figure 4-6-13: Multicast Filter Page Screenshot

Object	Description
IP-Range	Configure the IP-Range function on this page.
Port Filter	Configure the port filter function on this page.



# 4.6.3.1 IP-Range

This page provides to configure the desired IP-ranges to be filtered; the screen in Figure 4-6-14 appears.

IP-Range Por	t Filter			
Create IP-Ran	ge			
IP-Range	ID:		(1-30)	
Start Multi	icast IP:		(Format: 225.0.0.1)	Create
End Multio	End Multicast IP: (Format: 225.0.0.1)			Create
IP-Range Tabl	e			
			IP-Rang	je ID Select
Select	IP-Range ID	Start Multicast	: IP	End Multicast IP
		Apply Delete	Help	
Total IP-Range	:0			



### The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Create IP-Range	
IP-Range ID	Enter the IP-range ID.
Start Multicast IP	Enter start multicast IP of the IP-range.
End Multicast IP	Enter end multicast IP of the IP-range.
IP-Range Table	
IP-Range ID Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quick-select the corresponding IP-range ID based on the ID number you entered.
Select	Select the desired entry to delete or modify the corresponding IP-range. It is multi-optional.
IP-Range ID	Displays IP-range ID.
Start Multicast IP	Displays start multicast IP of the IP-range.
End Multicast IP	Displays end multicast IP of the IP-range.

### Buttons

Create : Click to create a new IP-Range.

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Delete : Click to delete IP-Range ID.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



### 4.6.3.2 Port Filter

This page provides to configure the multicast filter rules for port. Take the configuration on this page and the configuration on IP-Range page together to implement multicast filter function on the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-6-15 appears.

Port Filte	r Config							
					Port		Select	
Select	Port	Filter	Action Mode	Bound IP-Range (ID)		Max G	roups	LAG
		Disable 🔻	Permit 🔻					
	1	Disable	permit			256		-
	2	Disable	permit			256		
	3	Disable	permit			256		
	4	Disable	permit			256		
	5	Disable	permit			256		
	6	Disable	permit			256		
	7	Disable	permit			256		
	8	Disable	permit			256		
	9	Disable	permit			256		
	10	Disable	permit			256		
	11	Disable	permit			256		
	12	Disable	permit			256		-
				Apply				

1. The port filter configuration here has no effect on static multicast IP.

2. Up to 15 IP-Ranges can be bound to one port. Please input the Bound IP-Range (ID) in the format like: 1-3,5.

3. "Max Groups" works independently of port filter.

Figure	<b>4-6-15</b> :	Port Filter	Page	Screenshot
--------	-----------------	-------------	------	------------

Object	Description
Port Filter Config	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the port number entered.
Select	Select the desired port for multicast filtering. It is multi-optional.
Port	Displays the port number.
• Filter	Select Enable/Disable multicast filtering feature on the port.
Action Mode	<ul> <li>Select the action mode to process multicast packets when the multicast IP is in the filtering IP-range.</li> <li>Permit: Only the multicast packets whose multicast IP is in the IP-range will be processed.</li> <li>Deny: Only the multicast packets whose multicast IP is not in the IP-range will</li> </ul>
	be processed.
Bound IP-Range (ID)	Enter the IP-rang ID the port will be bound to.



Max Groups	Specify the maximum number of multicast groups to prevent some ports taking up
	too much bandwidth.
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.

~	Multicast Filter feature can only have effect on the VLAN with IGMP Snooping enabled.
	Multicast Filter feature has no effect on static multicast IP.
Note	Up to 5 IP-Ranges can be bound to one port.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.6.4 Packet Statistics

This page allows viewing the multicast data traffic on each port of the Managed Switch, which facilitates to monitor the IGMP messages in the network. The screen in Figure 4-6-16 appears.

GSW-4840S	Packet St	atistics					
li de la companya de	Auto F	(efresh					
System	A	uto Refresh:	Enat	ble 🖲 Disable			
Switching		-freeb Devied:			(2, 200)		Apply
VLAN	R	etresn Period:		SI	BC (3-300)		
Spanning Tree							
∥ulticast	IGMP	Statistics				10	
IGMP Snooping						Port	Select
• Multicast IP • Multicast Filter	Port	Query Packet	Report Packet(V1)	Report Packet(V2)	Report Packet(V3)	Leave Packet	Error Packe
Packet Statistics	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
)oS	2	0	0	0	0	0	0
CL	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
INMP	4	0	0	0	0	0	0
faintenance	5	0	0	0	0	0	0
ave Config	6	0	0	0	0	0	0
	7	0	0	0	0	0	0
.ogout	8	0	0	0	0	0	0
	9	0	0	0	0	0	0
	10	0	0	0	0	0	0
	11	0	0	0	0	0	0
	12	0	0	0	0	0	0 •
			Defree				

Figure 4-6-16: Packet Statistics Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Packet Statistics	View the multicast data traffic on each port of the Managed Switch on this page.



# 4.6.4.1 Packet Statistics

This page allows viewing the multicast data traffic on each port of the Managed Switch, which facilitates to monitor the IGMP messages in the network. The screen in Figure 4-6-17 appears.

Auto R	lefresh					
Au	uto Refresh:	🔍 Enab	le 🖲 Disable			
Refresh Period:		Sec (3-300)			Apply	
GMP	Statistics					
					Port	Select
Port	Query Packet	Report Packet(V1)	Report Packet(V2)	Report Packet(V3)	Leave Packet	Error Packet
1	0	0	0	0	0	0 🔶
2	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0
12	0	0	0	0	0	0 🗸

Figure 4-6-17: Packet Statistics Page Screenshot

Object	Description	
Auto Refresh		
Auto Refresh	Select Enable/Disable auto refresh feature.	
Refresh Period	Enter the time from 3 to 300 in seconds to specify the auto refresh period.	
IGMP Statistics		
Port Select	Click the Select button to quick-select the corresponding port based on the port	
	number entered.	
• Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.	



Query Packet	Displays the number of query packets the port received.
Report Packet (V1)	Displays the number of IGMPv1 report packets the port received.
Report Packet (V2)	Displays the number of IGMPv3 report packets the port received.
Report Packet (V3)	Displays the number of IGMPv3 report packets the port received.
Leave Packet	Displays the number of leave packets the port received.
Error Packet	Displays the number of error packets the port received.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.
Refresh: Click to refresh current web page.
Clear : Click to clear per port packet statistics.

Help: : Click to display help web page.



# 4.7 QoS

QoS (Quality of Service) functions to provide different quality of service for various network applications and requirements and optimize the bandwidth resource distribution so as to provide a network service experience of a better quality.

### QoS

This Managed Switch classifies the ingress packets, maps the packets to different priority queues and then forwards the packets according to specified scheduling algorithms to implement QoS function. The screen in Figure 4-7-1 appears.



#### Figure 4-7-1: QoS Function

- Traffic classification: Identifies packets conforming to certain characters according to certain rules.
- Map: The user can map the ingress packets to different priority queues based on the priority modes. This Managed Switch implements three priority modes based on port, on 802.1P and on DSCP.
- Queue scheduling algorithm: When the network is congested, the problem that many packets compete for resources must be solved, usually in the way of queue scheduling. The Managed Switch supports four schedule modes: SP, WRR, SP+WRR and Equ.

### **Priority Mode**

This Managed Switch implements three priority modes based on port, on 802.1P and on DSCP. By default, the priority mode based on port is enabled and the other two modes are optional.

#### 1. Port Priority

Port priority is a priority level of the port. After port priority is configured, the data stream will be mapped to the egress queues directly according to the priority level of the port.



### 2. 802.1P Priority



Figure 4-7-2: 802.1Q Frame

As shown in the figure above, each 802.1Q Tag has a Pri field, comprising 3 bits. The 3-bit priority field is 802.1p priority in the range of 0 to 7. 802.1P priority determines the priority of the packets based on the Pri value. On the Web management page of the Managed Switch, you can configure different priority tags mapping to the corresponding priority levels, and then the switch determine which packet is sent preferentially when forwarding packets. The switch processes untagged packets based on the default priority mode.

### 3. DSCP Priority





As shown in the figure above, the ToS (Type of Service) in an IP header contains 8 bits. The first three bits indicate IP precedence in the range of 0 to 7. RFC2474 re-defines the ToS field in the IP packet header, which is called the DS field. The first six bits (bit 0-bit 5) of the DS field indicate DSCP precedence in the range of 0 to 63. The last 2 bits (bit 6 and bit 7) are reserved. On the Web management page, you can configure different DS field mapping to the corresponding priority levels. Non-IP datagram with 802.1Q tag are mapped to different priority levels based on 802.1P priority mode; the untagged non-IP datagram are mapped based on port priority mode.

#### Schedule Mode

When the network is congested, the problem that many packets compete for resources must be solved, usually in the way of queue scheduling. The Managed Switch implements four scheduling queues, TC0, TC1, TC2 and TC3. TC0 has the lowest priority while TC3 has the highest priority. The Managed Switch provides four schedule modes: SP, WRR, SP+WRR and Equ.

1. SP-Mode: Strict-Priority Mode. In this mode, the queue with higher priority will occupy the whole bandwidth. Packets in the queue with lower priority are sent only when the queue with higher priority is empty. The Managed Switch has four egress queues labeled as TC0, TC1, TC2 and TC3. In SP mode, their priorities increase in order. TC3 has the highest priority. The disadvantage of SP queue is that: if there are packets in the queues with higher priority for a long time in congestion, the packets in the queues with lower priority will be "starved to death" because they are not served.





2. WRR-Mode: Weight Round Robin Mode. In this mode, packets in all the queues are sent in order based on the weight value for each queue and every queue can be assured of a certain service time. The weight value indicates the occupied proportion of the resource. WRR queue overcomes the disadvantage of SP queue that the packets in the queues with lower priority can not get service for a long time. In WRR mode, though the queues are scheduled in order, the service time for each queue is not fixed, that is to say, if a queue is empty, the next queue will be scheduled. In this way, the bandwidth



Figure 4-7-5: WRR-Mode

- 3. SP+WRR-Mode: Strict-Priority + Weight Round Robin Mode. In this mode, this Managed Switch provides two scheduling groups, SP group and WRR group. Queues in SP group and WRR group are scheduled strictly based on strict-priority mode while the queues inside WRR group follow the WRR mode. In SP+WRR mode, TC3 is in the SP group; TC0, TC1 and TC2 belong to the WRR group and the weight value ratio of TC0, TC1 and TC2 is 1:2:4. In this way, when scheduling queues, the Managed Switch allows TC3 to occupy the whole bandwidth following the SP mode and the TC0, TC1 and TC2 in the WRR group will take up the bandwidth according to their ratio 1:2:4.
- 4. Equ-Mode: Equal-Mode. In this mode, all the queues occupy the bandwidth equally. The weight value ratio of all the queues is 1:1:1:1.



The QoS module is mainly for traffic control and priority configuration, including three submenus: **DiffServ**, **Bandwidth Control** and **Voice VLAN**.

The QoS function is used to configure the basic functions of the Managed Switch, the screen in Figure 4-7-6 appears.

-GSW-4840S	For Priority	ouz. 19/003 mapping	DSCP Phonty	Schedule Wode		
	Port Priority	/ Config				
System	Select	Port	Priorit	ty	LAG	
Switching			TC 0	•		
/LAN		1	TC 0	)	<del></del>	
panning Tree		2	TC 0	)		
lulticast		3	TC 0	)	270	
10S		4	TC (	)	2229	
DiffServ		5	TC 0	)	2225	
Bandwidth Control		6	TC 0			
Voice VLAN		7	TC 0	)		
VCL		8	TC 0	)	<del></del> .	
SNMP		9	TC (	)	875).	
laintenance		10	TC 0	)	777)	
Save Config		11	TC (	)	272	
		12	TC (	)	222	+
Logout			Apply	Help		
	Note:					
	Among the (	Queue TC-ID TC0,TC1T	C3, the <mark>bigg</mark> er value,	the higher priority.		

### Figure 4-7-6: QoS Page Screenshot

This section has the following items:

- DiffservConfigure per port basic features of Managed Switch.Bandwidth ControlConfigure static trunk or LACP on this page.
- Voice VLAN
- The Managed Switch per port Ethernet Traffic statistics monitor.



# 4.7.1 DiffServ

This Managed Switch classifies the ingress packets, maps the packets to different priority queues and then forwards the packets according to specified scheduling algorithms to implement QoS function, implements three priority modes based on port, on 802.1P and on DSCP, and supports four queue scheduling algorithms. The port priorities are labeled as TC0, TC1, TC2 and TC3, the DiffServ function can be implemented on **Port Priority**, **802.1P Priority**, **DSCP Priority** and **Schedule Mode** pages. The screen in Figure 4-7-7 appears.

G3W-40405						
	Port Priority	/ Config				
System	Select	Port	Priorit	у	LAG	
witching			TC 0	•		
LAN		1	TC 0			
panning Tree		2	TC 0			
ulticast		3	TC 0			
oS		4	TC 0		222	
DiffServ		5	TC 0			
Bandwidth Control		6	TC 0			
Voice VLAN		7	TC 0			
CL		8	TC 0			
NMP		9	TC 0			
laintenance		10	TC 0			
ave Config		11	TC 0		270	
		12	TC 0		<u>200</u> 20	+
ogout			Apply	Help		
	Note: Among the C	Queue TC-ID TC0,TC1T	C3, the bigger value,	the higher priority.		



Object	Description
Port Priority	Configure the port priority on this page.
802.1P/CoS mapping	Configure the 802.1P/CoS mapping on this page.
DSCP Priority	Configure the DSCP priority on this page.
Schedule Mode	Configure the schedule mode on this page.



# 4.7.1.1 Port Priority

This page provides configure the port priority, the screen in Figure 4-7-8 appears.

ort Priority 80	2.1P/CoS mapping	DSCP Priority Schedule Mode	9
Port Priority Co	onfig		
Select	Port	Priority	LAG
		TC 0 🔻	
	1	TC 0	·
	2	TC 0	
	3	TC 0	
	4	TC 0	
	5	TC 0	
	6	TC 0	
	7	TC 0	
	8	TC 0	
	9	TC 0	
	10	TC 0	
	11	TC 0	
	12	TC 0	
		Apply Help	

### Figure 4-7-8: Port Priority Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Port Priority Config		
Select	Select the desired port to configure its priority. It is multi-optional.	
• Port	Displays the physical port number of the Managed Switch.	
Priority	Specify the priority for the port.	
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.	

# Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.7.1.2 802.1P/CoS mapping

This page provides configure 802.1P priority. 802.1P gives the Pri field in 802.1Q tag a recommended definition. This field is used to divide packets into 8 priorities. When 802.1P Priority is enabled, the packets with 802.1Q tag are mapped to different priority levels based on 802.1P priority mode. The untagged packets are mapped based on port priority mode; the screen in Figure 4-7-9 appears.

802.1P Priority Config						
802.1P Prior	ity: Cinable	<ul> <li>Disable</li> </ul>	Apply			
Priority and CoS	-mapping Config					
Tag-ID/CoS-ID:		Queue T	C-ID:			
Tag-ID/CoS-ID	Queue TC-ID	Tag-ID/CoS-ID	Queue TC-ID			
0 TC1		1	TC0			
2	2 TC0		TC1			
4 TC2		5	TC2			
6 TC3		7	TC3			
Apply Help						

Figure 4-7-9: 802.1P/CoS mapping Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description		
802.1P Port Priority Config			
• 802.1P Port Priority	Select Enable/Disable 802.1P Priority.		
Priority and CoS-mapping Config			
• Tag-ID/CoS-ID	Indicates the precedence level defined by IEEE 802.1P or the CoS ID.		
Queue TC-ID	Indicates the priority level of egress queue the packets with tag and CoS-id are mapped to. The priority levels of egress queue are labeled as TC0, TC1, TC2 and TC3.		



To complete QoS function configuration, please go to the **Schedule Mode** page to select a schedule mode after the configuration is finished on this page.



# 4.7.1.3 DSCP Priority

This page provides configure DSCP priority. DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) is a new definition to IP ToS field given by IEEE. This field is used to divide IP datagram into 64 priorities. When DSCP Priority is enabled, IP datagram are mapped to different priority levels based on DSCP priority mode; non-IP datagram with 802.1Q tag are mapped to different priority levels based on 802.1P priority mode if 802.1P Priority mode is enabled; the untagged non-IP datagram are mapped based on port priority mode; the screen in Figure 4-7-10 appears.

Priority 802.1P/C	toS mapping DSCF	Priority Schedule Me	ode	
DSCP Priority Config				
DSCP Priority: Enable		Disable	Арр	у
Priority Level				
DSCP:	•	Priority L	evel:	
DSCP	Priority Level	DSCP	Priority Level	
0	TC0	1	TC0	-
2	TC0	3	TC0	
4	TC0	5	TC0	
6	TC0	7	TC0	
8	TC0	9	TC0	
10	TC0	11	TC0	
12	TC0	13	TC0	
14	TC0	15	TC0	
16	TC1	17	TC1	
18	TC1	19	TC1	-
	A	pply Help		

### Figure 4-7-10: DSCP Priority Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description			
DSCP Priority Config				
DSCP Priority	Select Enable or Disable DSCP Priority.			
Priority Level				
• DSCP	Indicates the priority determined by the DS region of IP datagram. It ranges from 0 to 63.			
Priority Level	Indicates the priority level the packets with tag are mapped to. The priority levels are labeled as TC0, TC1, TC2 and TC3.			





To complete QoS function configuration, you have to go to the **Schedule Mode** page to select a schedule mode after the configuration is finished on this page.

# 4.7.1.4 Schedule Mode

This page provides select a schedule mode for the Managed Switch, when the network is congested, the issue that many packets compete for resources must be solved, usually in the way of queue scheduling. The Managed Switch will control the forwarding sequence of the packets according to the priority queues and scheduling algorithms set. On this Managed Switch, the priority levels are labeled as TC0, TC1... TC3 and the screen in Figure 4-7-11 appears.

Port Priority	802.1P/CoS map	oping DSCP Priority	Schedule Mode	
Schedule N	Node Config			
Sched	ule Mode:	Equ-Mode 🔻		Apply Help



Object	Description		
Schedule Mode Config			
SP- Mode	Strict-Priority Mode. In this mode, the queue with higher priority will occupy the		
	whole bandwidth. Packets in the queue with lower priority are sent only when the		
	queue with higher priority is empty.		
WRR-Mode	Weight Round Robin Mode. In this mode, packets in all the queues are sent in		
	order based on the weight value for each queue. The weight value ratio of TC0,		
	TC1, TC2 and TC3 is 1:2:4:8.		
SP+WRR Mode	Strict-Priority + Weight Round Robin Mode. In this mode, this Managed Switch		
	provides two scheduling groups, SP group and WRR group. Queues in SP group		
	and WRR group are scheduled strictly based on strict-priority mode while the		
	queues inside WRR group follow the WRR mode. In SP+WRR mode, TC3 is in		
	SP group; TC0, TC1 and TC2 belong to the WRR group and the weight value ratio		
	of TC0, TC1 and TC2 is 1:2:4. In this way, when scheduling queues, the Managed		
	Switch allows TC3 to occupy the whole bandwidth following the SP mode and the		
	TC0, TC1 and TC2 in the WRR group will take up the bandwidth according to their		
	ratio 1:2:4.		
• Equ-Mode	Equal-Mode. In this mode, all the queues occupy the bandwidth equally. The weight		
	value ratio of all the queues is 1:1:1:1.		



# 4.7.2 Bandwidth Control

The Bandwidth function allowing to control the traffic rate and broadcast flow on each port to ensure network in working order, can be implemented on **Rate Limit** and **Storm Control** pages; the screen in Figure 4-7-12 appears.

SSW-4840S _	Rate Limit	Config			
(stam	Rate Limit	Config			
etem		ooning			
stem				Port	Selec
witching	Select	Port	Ingress Rate(Kbps)	Egress Rate(Kbps)	LAG
.AN			128 🔹	1024 💌	
anning Tree		1	(		
ilticast		2	9 <del>717</del>	9 <del>757</del>	
)S		3	5 <b></b>	52	
DiffServ		4	3 <b></b>	5 <del></del>	
Bandwidth Control		5	1212	077	1977
VUICE VLAN		6	<u></u>	3 <del></del>	
		7			
aintenance		8	<u>6111</u>	- 	12 <u>11</u> 7
ave Config		9	3 <del></del>	2 <del>411</del>	
		10	2757	2755	
gout		11	5 <u></u>	<u>8977</u>	
		12		i	
			Apply	elp	



Object	Description	
Rate Limit	Configure the rate limit function on this page.	
Storm Control	Configure the storm control function on this page.	



# 4.7.2.1 Rate Limit

This page provides Rate limit functions to control the ingress/egress traffic rate on each port via configuring the available bandwidth of each port. In this way, the network bandwidth can be reasonably distributed and utilized, the screen in Figure 4-7-13 appears.

ate Limit 📘	Storm Control			
Rate Limit C	Config			
			Port	Select
Select	Port	Ingress Rate(Kbps)	Egress Rate(Kbps)	LAG
		128 🔹	1024 🔻	
	1			
	2			
	3			
	4			
	5			
	6			
	7			
	8			
	9			
	10			
	11			
	12			•
		Apply H	elp	
Note:				

1. For one port, you cannot enable the Storm Control and the Ingress rate control at the same time.

 If you select "Manual" to set Ingress/Egress rate, the system will automatically select integral multiple of 64Kbps that closest to the rate you entered as the real Ingress/Egress rate.

#### Figure 4-7-13: Rate Limit Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description	
Rate Limit Config		
Port Select	Click the Select button to quick-select the corresponding port based on the port	
	number entered.	
Select	Select the desired port for Rate configuration. It is multi-optional.	
• Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.	
Ingress Rate(Kbps)	Configure the bandwidth for receiving packets on the port and select a rate from the	



	dropdown list or select "Manual" to set Ingress rate, the system will automatically	
	select integral multiple of 64Kbps that closest to the rate you entered as the real	
	Ingress rate.	
Egress Rate(Kbps)	Configure the bandwidth for sending packets on the port and select a rate from the	
	dropdown list or select "Manual" to set Egress rate, the system will automatically	
	select integral multiple of 64Kbps that closest to the rate you entered as the real	
	Egress rate.	
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.	

Once enable ingress rate limit feature for the storm control-enabled port, storm control feature will be disabled for this port.



When selecting **"Manual"** to set Ingress/Egress rate, the system will automatically select integral multiple of 64Kbps that closest to the rate entered as the real Ingress/Egress rate. For example, enter 1000Kbps for egress rate; the system will automatically select 1024Kbps as the real Egress rate.

When egress rate limit feature is enabled for one or more ports, suggested to disable the flow control on each port to ensure the Managed Switch works normally.

### **Buttons**

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.7.2.2 Storm Control

This page provides Storm Control function allows the Managed Switch to filter broadcast, multicast and UL frame in the network. If the transmission rate of the three kind packets exceeds the set bandwidth, the packets will be automatically discarded to avoid network broadcast storm; the screen in Figure 4-7-14 appears.

Storm Con	trol Config				
	and coming			Port	Select
Select	Port	Broadcast Rate(bps)	Multicast Rate(bps)	UL-Frame Rate(bps)	LAG
		128K 🔻	128K 🔻	128K 🔻	
	1				
	2				
	3				
	4				
	5				
	6				
	7				
	8				
	9				
	10				
	11				
	12				•
		Apply	y Help		

### Figure 4-7-14: Storm Control Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description	
Storm Control Config		
Port Select	Click the Select button to quickly select the corresponding port based on the por	
	number entered.	
Select	Select the desired port for Storm Control configuration. It is multi-optional.	
Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.	
Broadcast Rate(bps)	Select the bandwidth for receiving broadcast packets on the port. The packet traffic	
	exceeding the bandwidth will be discarded. Select Disable to disable the storm	



	control function for the port.	
Multicast Rate(bps)	Select the bandwidth for receiving multicast packets on the port. The packet traffic	
	exceeding the bandwidth will be discarded. Select Disable to disable the storm	
	control function for the port.	
UL-Frame Rate(bps)	Select the bandwidth for receiving UL-Frame on the port. The packet traffic	
	exceeding the bandwidth will be discarded. Select Disable to disable the storm	
	control function for the port.	
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.	



Once storm control feature for the ingress rate limit-enabled port is enabled, ingress rate limit feature will be disabled for this port.

### Buttons

Apply

: Click to apply changes.

Help : Click

: Click to display help web page.

# 4.7.3 Voice VLAN

The Voice VLANs are configured specially for voice data stream. By configuring Voice VLANs and adding the ports with voice devices attached to voice VLANs, perform QoS-related configuration for voice data, ensuring the transmission priority of voice data stream and voice quality.

### OUI Address (Organizationally unique identifier address)

The Managed Switch can determine whether a received packet is a voice packet by checking its source MAC address. If the source MAC address of a packet complies with the OUI addresses configured by the system, the packet is determined as voice packet and transmitted in voice VLAN.

An OUI address is a unique identifier assigned by IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) to a device vendor. It comprises the first 24 bits of a MAC address. You can recognize which vendor a device belongs to according to the OUI address. The following table shows the OUI addresses of several manufacturers. The following OUI addresses are preset of the Managed Switch by default.

Number	OUI Address	Vendor
1	00-01-e3-00-00-00	Siemens phone
2	00-03-6b-00-00-00	Cisco phone
3	00-04-0d-00-00-00	Avaya phone
4	00-60-b9-00-00-00	Philips/NEC phone
5	00-d0-1e-00-00-00	Pingtel phone
6	00-e0-75-00-00-00	Polycom phone
7	00-e0-bb-00-00-00	3com phone

Table 4-7-1: OUI addresses on the Managed Switch

#### Port Voice VLAN Mode

A voice VLAN can operate in two modes: automatic mode and manual mode.

Automatic Mode: In this mode, the Managed Switch automatically adds a port which receives voice packets to voice VLAN and determines the priority of the packets through learning the source MAC of the UNTAG packets sent from IP phone when it is powered on. The aging time of voice VLAN can be configured on the Managed Switch. If the Managed Switch does not receive any voice packet on the ingress port within the aging time, the Managed Switch will remove this port from voice VLAN. Voice ports are automatically added into or removed from voice VLAN.

Manual Mode: You need to manually add the port of IP phone to voice VLAN, and then the Managed Switch will assign ACL rules and configure the priority of the packets through learning the source MAC address of packets and matching OUI address.

In practice, the port voice VLAN mode is configured according to the type of packets sent out from voice device and the link type of the port. The following table shows the detailed information.



Port Voice VLAN Mode	Voice Stream Type	Link type of the port and processing mode
	TAC voice stream	Untagged: Not supported.
Automatic Mode	TAG VOICE Stream	Tagged: Supported. The default VLAN of the port can not be voice VLAN.
Automatic Mode	UNTAG voice	Untagged: Supported.
	stream	Tagged: Not supported.
Manual Mode	TAC voice stream	Untagged: Not supported.
	TAG VOICE Stream	Tagged : Supported. The default VLAN of the port should not be voice VLAN.
	UNTAG voice	Untagged: Supported.
	stream	Tagged: Not supported.

 Table 4-7-2: Port Voice VLAN Mode and Voice Stream Processing Mode

# Security Mode of Voice VLAN

When voice VLAN is enabled for a port, it can configure its security mode to filter data stream. If security mode is enabled, the port just forwards voice packets, and discards other packets whose source MAC addresses do not match OUI addresses. If security mode is not enabled, the port forwards all the packets.

Security Mode	Packet Type	Processing Mode
	UNTAG packet	When the source MAC address of the packet is the OUI address that
Enable	Packet with voice VLAN TAG	can be identified, the packet can be transmitted in the voice VLAN. Otherwise, the packet will be discarded.
	Packet with other VLAN TAG	The processing mode for the device to deal with the packet is determined by whether the port permits the VLAN or not, independent of voice VLAN security mode.
Security Mode	Packet Type	Processing Mode
Disable	UNTAG packet	Do not check the source MAC address of the packet and all the
	Packet with voice VLAN TAG	packets can be transmitted in the voice VLAN.
	Packet with other VLAN TAG	The processing mode for the device to deal with the packet is determined by whether the port permits the VLAN or not, independent of voice VLAN security mode.

Table 4-7-3: Security Mode and Packets Processing Mode



Don't transmit voice stream together with other business packets in the voice VLAN except for some

special requirements.



The Voice VLAN function can be implemented on **Global Config**, **Port Config** and **OUI Config** pages; the screen in Figure 4-7-15 appears.

PLANET Retworking & Communication			
FGSW-4840S	Global Config Port Config	OUI Config	
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree Multicast QoS • DiffServ • Bandwidth Control • Voice VLAN ACL SNMP Maintenance Save Config Logout	Global Config Voice VLAN: VLAN ID: Aging Time: Priority:	<ul> <li>Enable Disable</li> <li>(2-4094)</li> <li>1440 min (1-43200, default: 1440)</li> <li>6 </li> </ul>	Apply Help
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.			

Figure 4-7-15: Voice VLAN Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Global Config	Configure Voice VLAN global config on this page.
Port Config	Configure per port Voice VLAN config on this page.
OUI Config	Configure OUI config on this page.



# 4.7.3.1 Global Config

This page provides configure the global parameters of the voice VLAN, including VLAN ID and aging time; the screen in Figure 4-7-16 appears.

Global Config	Port Config	OUI Config		
Global Conf	ig			
Voice \	/LAN:	🔍 Enable 🔎 I	Disable	
VLAN I	D:		(2-4094)	Apply
Aging T	îme:	1440	min (1-43200, default: 1440)	
Priority	:	6 🔻		

Figure 4-7-16: Global Config Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Global Config	
Voice VLAN	Select Enable/Disable Voice VLAN function.
VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID of the voice VLAN.
Aging Time	Specifies the living time of the member port in auto mode after the OUI address is aging out.
Prioity	Select the priority of the port when sending voice data.

### Buttons

Apply

Help

: Click to apply changes.

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.7.3.2 Port Config

Before the voice VLAN function is enabled, the parameters of the ports in the voice VLAN should be configured on this page; the screen in Figure 4-7-17 appears.

Global Config	Port Config	OUI Config			
Port Config	l i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i				
				Port	Select
Select	Port	Port Mode	Security Mode	Member State	LAG
		•	•		
	1	Auto	Disable	Inactive	4
	2	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	3	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	4	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	5	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	6	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	7	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	8	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	9	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	10	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	11	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	12	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	13	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
	14	Auto	Disable	Inactive	
		App	ly Help		

Figure 4-7-17: Port Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Port Config	
Port Select	Click the <b>Select</b> button to quick-select the corresponding port based on the port number you entered.
Select	Select the desired port for voice VLAN configuration. It is multi-optional.
Port	Displays the port number of the Managed Switch.
Port Mode	Select the mode for the port to join the voice VLAN.
	• Auto: In this mode, the switch automatically adds a port to the voice VLAN or
	removes a port from the voice VLAN by checking whether the port
	receives voice data or not.
	• Manual: In this mode, you can manually add a port to the voice VLAN or



	remove a port from the voice VLAN.	
Security Mode	Configure the security mode for forwarding packets.	
	• <b>Disable:</b> All packets are forwarded.	
	Enable: Only voice data are forwarded.	
Member State	Displays the state of the port in the current voice VLAN.	
• LAG	Displays the LAG number which the port belongs to.	



To enable voice VLAN function for the LAG member port, please ensure its member state accords with its port mode.

If a port is a member port of voice VLAN, changing its port mode to be "Auto" will make the port leave the voice VLAN and will not join the voice VLAN automatically until it receives voice streams.

#### Buttons



: Click to apply changes.



: Click to display help web page.



# 4.7.3.3 OUI Config

The Managed Switch supports OUI creation and adds the MAC address of the special voice device to the OUI table of the Managed Switch. The Managed Switch determines whether a received packet is a voice packet by checking its OUI address. The Managed Switch analyzes the received packets. If the packets are recognized as voice packets, the access port will be automatically added to the Voice VLAN; the screen in Figure 4-7-18 appears.

Blobal Config	Port Config	OUI Config				
Create OUI						
OUI:				(Format: 00-00-00-	00-00-01)	
Mask:		FF-FF-FF-00	)-00-00	(Default: FF-FF-FF	-00-00-00)	Create
Descrip	tion:			(16 characters ma	ximum)	
					,	
OUI Table						
Select	OUI			Mask	Descrit	otion
	00-01-e3-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	Siemens	Phone
	00-03-6b-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	Cisco P	hone
	00-04-0d-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	Avaya F	hone
	00-60-b9-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	Philips F	Phone
	00-d0-1e-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	Pingtel F	Phone
	00-e0-75-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	PolyCom	Phone
	00-e0-bb-0	0-00-00	ff-ff	-ff-00-00-00	3Com F	hone
		All	Delet	Help		
		7 50	Deret	Thomp		

### Figure 4-7-18: OUI Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Create OUI	
• OUI	Enter the OUI address of the voice device.
• Mask	Enter the OUI address mask of the voice device.
Description	Give a description to the OUI for identification.
OUI Table	
Select	Select the desired entry to view the detailed information.
• OUI	Displays the OUI address of the voice device.
• Mask	Displays the OUI address mask of the voice device.
Description	Displays the description of the OUI.



### **Buttons**



: Click to display help web page.




# 4.8 ACL

ACL (Access Control List) is used to filter data packets by configuring a series of match conditions and operations. It provides a flexible and secured access control policy and facilitates you to control the network security. The ACL function is used to configure the ACL functions of the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-8-1 appears.

PLANET Networking & Communication			
FGSW-4840S	ACL Summary ACL Creat	e MAC ACL Standard-IP ACL Extend-IP ACL	
System Switching	Search Options Select ACL:	<b></b>	
VLAN Spanning Tree Multicast	ACL Type: Rule Order:		Delete
QoS ACL • ACL Config	Rule Table		
<ul> <li>Policy Config</li> <li>Policy Binding</li> <li>SNMP</li> </ul>		All Delete Help	
Maintenance Save Config			
Logout			
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.			

Figure 4-8-1: ACL Page Screenshot

This section has the following items:

ACL Config
 Configure ACL function of Managed Switch.
 Policy Config
 Configure ACL Policy on this page.
 Policy Binding
 Configure ACL Policy Binding function on this page.



# 4.8.1 ACL Config

An ACL may contain a number of rules, and each rule specifies a different package range. Packets are matched in match order. Once a rule is matched, the Managed Switch processes the matched packets taking the operation specified in the rule without considering the other rules, which can enhance the performance of the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-8-2 appears.

PLANET Ketworklag & Communication			
FGSW-4840S	ACL Summary ACL Create MAC A	ACL Standard-IP ACL Extend-IP ACL	
	Search Options		
System	Select ACL:	•	
Switching	ACL Type:		Delete
VLAN Spanning Tree	Rule Order:		
Multicast			
QoS	Rule Table		
ACL			
ACL Config     Delieu Config	A	II Delete Help	
Policy Binding			
SNMP			
Maintenance			
Save Config			
Logout			
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.			

#### Figure 4-8-2: ACL Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
ALC Summary	View the current ACLs configured on this page.
ACL Create	Provide ACL create function on this page.
MAC ACL	Provide MAC ACL function on this page.
Standard-IP ACL	Provide Standard-IP ACL function on this page.
Extend-IP ACL	Provide Extend-IP ACL function on this page.



# 4.8.1.1 ACL Summary

This page allows viewing the current ACLs configured and the screen in Figure 4-8-3 appears.

ACL Summary	ACL Create	MAC ACL	Standard-IP ACL	Extend-IP ACL	
Search Optio	ns				
Select A	CL:		•		
ACL Type	e:				Delete
Rule Ord	er:				
Rule Table					
		All	Delete	əlp	

## Figure 4-8-3: ACL Summary Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Search Options	
Select ACL	Select the ACL have created.
ACL Type	Displays the type of the ACL that select.
Rule Order	Displays the rule order of the ACL that select.
Rule Table	
Rule Table	Display the rule table of the ACL that selected. Also can edit the rules, view the details of them and move them up and down.

### Buttons

All : Click to choose all ACL items from ACL Summary table.

Delete : Click to delete ACL items from ACL Summary table.

Help : Click to display help web page.



## 4.8.1.2 ACL Create

This page allows create ACL item and the screen in Figure 4-8-4 appears.

Create ACL			
ACL ID:			0-99 MAC ACL
			100-199 Standard-IP ACL
		:	200-299 Extend-IP ACL
Rule Order:	User Config	¥	
	Сг	reate Help	

Figure 4-8-4: ACL Create Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Create ACL	
ACL ID	Enter ACL ID of the ACL that want to create.
Rule Order	User Config order is set to be match order in this ACL.

## Buttons

Create : Click to create ACL items.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.8.1.3 MAC ACL

The MAC ACLs analyze and process packets based on a series of match conditions, which can be the source MAC addresses and destination MAC addresses carried in the packets; the screen in Figure 4-8-5 appears.

ACL S	Summary	ACL Create	MAC ACL	Standard-IP ACL	Extend-IP ACL	
C	reate MAC	Rule				
	ACL ID:		MAC ACL V	]		
	Rule ID:					
	Operation	1:	Permit	▼		
	S-M/	AC:			Mask:	
	D-M/	AC:			Mask:	
			Cr	eate Help		

#### Figure 4-8-5: MAC ACL Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description		
Create MAC Rule			
ACL ID	Select the desired MAC ACL for configuration.		
Rule ID	Enter the rule ID.		
Operation	Select the operation for the Managed Switch to process packets which match the rules.		
	<ul> <li>Permit: Forward packets.</li> <li>Deny: Discard Packets.</li> </ul>		
• S-MAC	Enter the source MAC address contained in the rule.		
• D-MAC	Enter the destination MAC address contained in the rule.		
• Mask	Enter MAC address mask. If it is set to 1, it must strictly match the address.		

### Buttons

Create : Click to create MAC ACL items.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.8.1.4 Standard-IP ACL

The Standard-IP ACLs analyze and process data packets based on a series of match conditions, which can be the source IP addresses and destination IP addresses carried in the packets; the screen in Figure 4-8-6 appears.

ACL Summary ACL Create	MAC ACL	Standard-IP ACL	Extend-IP ACL	
Create Standard-IP Rule				
ACL ID:	Standard-IP A	ACL V		
Rule ID:				
Operation:	Permit	•		
S-IP:		Ν	/lask:	
D-IP:		Γ	/lask:	
	Cre	eate Help		

#### Figure 4-8-6: Standard-IP ACL Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Create Standard-IP Rule	
ACL ID	Select the desired Standard-IP ACL for configuration.
Rule ID	Enter the rule ID.
Operation	Select the operation for the Managed Switch to process packets which match the
	rules.
	Permit: Forward packets.
	• Deny: Discard Packets.
• S-IP	Enter the source IP address contained in the rule.
• D-IP	Enter the destination IP address contained in the rule.
• Mask	Enter IP address mask. If it is set to 1, it must strictly match the address.

#### Buttons

Create

Click to create Standard-IP ACL items.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



## 4.8.1.5 Extend-IP ACL

The Extend-IP ACLs analyze and process data packets based on a series of match conditions, which can be the source IP addresses, destination IP addresses, IP protocol and other information of this sort carried in the packets; the screen in Figure 4-8-7 appears.

ACL Summary	ACL Create	MAC ACL	Standard-IP ACL	Extend-IP ACL	
Create Exten	d-IP Rule				
ACL ID:		Extend-IP ACI	L V		
Rule ID:					
Operation	II.	Permit	•		
S-IP	:		1	Mask:	
D-IP	:		1	Mask:	
IP Protoc	ol:	All	•		
S-Po	ort:				
D-Po	ort:				
		Cre	ate Help		

Figure 4-8-7: Extend-IP ACL Page Screenshot

Object	Description		
Create Extend-IP Rule	Create Extend-IP Rule		
ACL ID	Select the desired Extend-IP ACL for configuration.		
Rule ID	Enter the rule ID.		
Operation	Select the operation for the Managed Switch to process packets which match the rules.		
	Permit: Forward packets.		
	• Deny: Discard Packets.		
• S-IP	Enter the source IP address contained in the rule.		
• D-IP	Enter the destination IP address contained in the rule.		
• Mask	Enter IP address mask. If it is set to 1, it must strictly match the address.		
IP Protocol	Select IP protocol contained in the rule.		
S-Port	Configure TCP/IP source port contained in the rule when TCP/UDP is selected from the pull-down list of IP Protocol.		
D-Port	Configure TCP/IP destination port contained in the rule when TCP/UDP is selected from the pull-down list of IP Protocol.		



# 4.8.2 Policy Config

A Policy is used to control the data packets those match the corresponding ACL rules by configuring ACLs and actions together for effect. The operations here include stream mirror, stream condition, QoS remarking and redirect; the screen in Figure 4-8-8 appears.

PLANET Hetworking & Communication	
FGSW-4840S	Policy Summary Policy Create Action Create
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree	Select Options Select Policy:  Action Table Select Select
Multicast QoS ACL • ACL Config	All Delete Help
• Policy Binding SNMP Maintenance Save Config	
Logout	
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.	

### Figure 4-8-8: Policy Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Policy Summary	View the current policy configured on this page.
Policy Create	Provide policy create function on this page.
Action Create	Provide action create function on this page.



# 4.8.2.1 Policy Summary

This page allows viewing the ACL and the corresponding operations in the policy; the screen in Figure 4-8-9 appears.

Policy Summary	Policy Create	Action Create			
Select Options					
Select Polic	y:	T			Delete
Action Table					
Sele	ct	Index		ACL ID	
	(	All Delete	Help		

Figure 4-8-9: Policy Summary Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Select Options	
Select Policy	Select name of the desired policy for view. If want to delete the desired policy, please click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Action Table	
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding policy.
• Index	Displays the index of the policy.
ACL ID	Displays the ID of the ACL contained in the policy.

#### Buttons

All

Click to choose all policy items from Policy Summary table.

Delete : Click to delete policy items from action table.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



## 4.8.2.2 Policy Create

This page allows create policy item and the screen in Figure 4-8-10 appears.

Policy Summary	Policy Create	Action Create	
Create Policy			
Policy Nam	e:		Create

## Figure 4-8-10: Policy Create Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object Description	
Create Policy	
Policy Name	Enter the name of the policy.

## Buttons



Help: : Click to display help web page.



## 4.8.2.3 Action Create

This page allows add ACL for the policy and the screen in Figure 4-8-11 appears.

Policy Summary Policy Cre	eate Action Create	
Create Action		
Select Policy:	Select Policy	
Select ACL:	Select ACL	
	Create Help	_

### Figure 4-8-11: Action Create Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object Description	
Create Action	
Select Policy	Select the name of the policy.
Select ACL	Select the ACL for configuration in the policy.

### Buttons

Create : Click to create action items.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.8.3 Policy Binding

The Policy Binding function can have the policy take its effect on a specific port / VLAN. The policy will take effect only when it is bound to a port/VLAN. In the same way, the port/VLAN will receive the data packets and process them based on the policy only when the policy is bound to the port/VLAN; the screen in Figure 4-8-12 appears.

PLANET Retworking & Communication	
FGSW-4840S	Binding Table Port Binding VLAN Binding
	Search Options
System Switching	Show Mode: Show All
VLAN	Policy Bind Table
Spanning Tree Multicast	Select Index Policy Name Interface Direction
QoS	All Delete Help
ACL	
ACL Config     Policy Config	
Policy Binding	
SNMP	
Maintenance Save Config	
Logout	
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights	

### Figure 4-8-12: Policy Binding Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Binding Table	View the binding table on this page.
Port Binding	Provide port binding function on this page.
VLAN Binding	Provide VLAN binding function on this page.



# 4.8.3.1 Binding Table

This page allows viewing the policy bound to port / VLAN and the screen in Figure 4-8-13 appears.

Binding 1	able	Port Binding	VLAN Binding		
Sear	ch Optic	ins			
S	Show Mo	ode:	Show All		
Polic	y Bind 1	Table			
S	elect	Index	Policy Name	Interface	Direction
			All Delete	Help	

Figure 4-8-13: Binding Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Select Options	
Show Mode	Select a show mode appropriate to current needs.
Policy Bind Table	
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding binding policy.
Index	Displays the index of the binding policy.
Policy Name	Displays the name of the binding policy.
Interface	Displays the port number or VLAN ID bound to the policy.
Direction	Displays the binding direction.

#### **Buttons**

All

Help

Click to choose all policy items from Policy Summary table.

Delete : Click to delete policy items from action table.

: Click to display help web page.



# 4.8.3.2 Port Binding

This page allows bind a policy to a port and the screen in Figure 4-8-14 appears.

Binding Table	Port Binding	VLAN Binding		
Port-Bind Co	onfig			
Policy N	ame:	Select Policy	•	Bind
Port:			(Format:1-3,6,8)	Help
_				
Port-Bind Ta	ble			
Index	Po	licy Name	Port	Direction

Figure 4-8-14: Port Binding Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Port-Bind Config	
Policy Name	Select the name of the policy that wants to bind.
Port	Enter the number of the port that to bind.
Port-Bind Table	
Index	Displays the index of the binding policy.
Policy Name	Displays the name of the binding policy.
Port	Displays the number of the port bound to the corresponding policy.
Direction	Displays the binding direction.

## Buttons

Bind

Click to choose to bind a policy to port.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.8.3.3 VLAN Binding

This page allows bind a policy to a VLAN and the screen in Figure 4-8-15 appears.

inding Table Port Bindi	ing VLAN Binding		
VLAN-Bind Config			
Policy Name:	Select Policy	•	Bind
VLAN ID:		(Format:2-10,100)	Help
VLAN-Bind Table			
Index	Policy Name	VLAN ID	Direction

Figure 4-8-15: VLAN Binding Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
VLAN-Bind Config	
Policy Name	Select the name of the policy that wants to bind.
VLAN ID	Enter the ID of the VLAN that want to bind.
VLAN-Bind Table	
Index	Displays the index of the binding policy.
Policy Name	Displays the name of the binding policy.
VLAN ID	Displays the ID of the VLAN bound to the corresponding policy.
Direction	Displays the binding direction.

### Buttons

Bind

Click to choose to bind a policy to VLAN.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



# **4.9 SNMP**

# **SNMP** Overview

The **Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)** is an application layer protocol that facilitates the exchange of management information between network devices. It is part of the **Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** protocol suite. SNMP enables network administrators to manage network performance, find and solve network problems, and plan for network growth.

An SNMP-managed network consists of three key components: Network management stations (NMSs), SNMP agents, Management information base (MIB) and network-management protocol :

- Network management stations (NMSs) : Sometimes called consoles, these devices execute management applications that monitor and control network elements. Physically, NMSs are usually engineering workstation-caliber computers with fast CPUs, megapixel color displays, substantial memory, and abundant disk space. At least one NMS must be present in each managed environment.
- **Agents** : Agents are software modules that reside in network elements. They collect and store management information such as the number of error packets received by a network element.
- Management information base (MIB) : A MIB is a collection of managed objects residing in a virtual information store.
   Collections of related managed objects are defined in specific MIB modules.
- **network-management protocol** : A management protocol is used to convey management information between agents and NMSs. SNMP is the Internet community's de facto standard management protocol.

#### **SNMP** Operations

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol. NMSs can send multiple requests without receiving a response.

- **Get --** Allows the NMS to retrieve an object instance from the agent.
- Set -- Allows the NMS to set values for object instances within an agent.
- **Trap --** Used by the agent to asynchronously inform the NMS of some event. The SNMPv2 trap message is designed to replace the SNMPv1 trap message.

#### **SNMP** community

An SNMP community is the group that devices and management stations running SNMP belong to. It helps define where information is sent. The community name is used to identify the group. A SNMP device or agent may belong to more than one SNMP community. It will not respond to requests from management stations that do not belong to one of its communities. SNMP default communities are:

- Write = private
- Read = public

The screen in Figure 4-9-1 appears.



PLANET Hetworklag & Communication	( the second					
FGSW-4840S	Global Config	SNMP View	SNMP Group	SNMP User	SNMP Community	1
	Global Conf	ig				
System Switching	SNMP:		Enable •	Disable		Apply
VLAN Spanning Tree	Local Engin	e				
Multicast QoS ACL SNMP	Local E	ngine ID:	800028d803003	04fb43b83	(10-64 Hex)	Default ID Apply
SNMP Config	Remote Eng	gine				
Notification     RMON     Maintenance     Save Config	Remote	Engine ID:			(0 or 10-64 Hex)	Apply Help
Copyright © 2014	Note: The total he	kadecimal charac	ters of Engine ID s	hould be even.		
Corporation. All rights reserved.						



This section has the following items:

SNMP Config	Configure SNMP function of Managed Switch.
Notification	Configure notification function on this page.
RMON	Configure RMON function on this page.



# 4.9.1 SNMP Config

The SNMP Config can be implemented on the Global Config, SNMP View, SNMP Group, SNMP User and SNMP Community pages; the screen in Figure 4-9-2 appears.

PLANET Networking & Communication	( the second					
FGSW-4840S	Global Config	SNMP View	SNMP Group	SNMP User	SNMP Community	
	Global Confi	g				
System Switching VLAN	SNMP:		Enable •	Disable		Apply
Spanning Tree	Local Engine	e				
Multicast QoS ACL	Local Er	ngine ID:	800028d803003	04fb43b83	(10-64 Hex)	Default ID Apply
SNMP	Remote End	ine				
Notification     RMON     Maintenance     Save Config	Remote	En <mark>gine ID:</mark>			(0 or 10-64 Hex)	Apply Help
Logout	Note: The total hex	adecimal charac	ters of Engine ID s	hould be even.		
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.						

Figure 4-9-2: SNMP Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Global Config	Provide SNMP Global Config on this page.
SNMP View	View the SNMP Configured on this page.
SNMP Group	Provide SNMP Group Config on this page.
SNMP User	Provide SNMP User Config on this page.
SNMP Community	Provide SNMP Community Config on this page.



# 4.9.1.1 Global Config

This page allows enabled SNMP function and the screen in Figure 4-9-3 appears.

Global Config SNMP View	SNMP Group SNMP User	SNMP Community	
Global Config			
SNMP:	Enable Isable		Apply
Local Engine			
Local Engine ID:	800028d80300304fb43b83	(10-64 Hex)	Default ID Apply
Remote Engine			
Remote Engine ID:		(0 or 10-64 Hex)	Apply Help
Note: The total hexadecimal charact	ers of Engine ID should be even.		

### Figure 4-9-3: Global ConfigPage Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Global Config	
• SNMP	Enable / Disable the SNMP function.
Local Engine	
Local Engine ID	Specify the Managed Switch's Engine ID for the remote clients. The Engine ID is a
	unique alphanumeric string used to identify the SNMP engine on the Managed
	Switch.
Remote Engine	
Remote Engine ID	Specify the Remote Engine ID for Managed Switch. The Engine ID is a unique
	alphanumeric string used to identify the SNMP engine on the remote device which
	receives traps and informs from Managed Switch.

#### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Default ID : Click for reset to default local engine ID.



Help : Click to display help web page.



The amount of Engine ID characters must be even.

## 4.9.1.2 SNMP View

The OID (Object Identifier) of the SNMP packets is used to describe the managed objects of the Managed Switch, and the MIB (Management Information Base) is the set of the OIDs. The SNMP View is created for the SNMP management station to manage MIB objects, the screen in Figure 4-9-4 appears.

Global Confi	ig SNMP View	SNMP Group SNMF	User SNMP Community	
View Co	nfig			
View	v Name:	(1	16 characters maximum)	
MIB	Object ID:		(61 characters maximum)	Create
Viev	v Type:	Include Exclude	)	
View Ta	ble			
Select	View Name	View Type	MIB Object ID	
	viewDefault	Include	1	
	viewDefault	Exclude	1.3.6.1.6.3.15	
	viewDefault	Exclude	1.3.6.1.6.3.16	
	viewDefault	Exclude	1.3.6.1.6.3.18	
		All Delete	Help	

Figure 4-9-4: SNMP View Page Screenshot

Object	Description
View Config	
View Name	Give a name to the View for identification, each View can include several entries with the same name.
MIB Object ID	Enter the Object Identifier (OID) for the entry of View.
• View Type	<ul> <li>Select the type for the view entry.</li> <li>Include: The view entry can be managed by the SNMP management station.</li> <li>Exclude: The view entry can not be managed by the SNMP management station.</li> </ul>



View Table	
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding view. All the entries of a View will be deleted together.
View Name	Displays the name of the View entry.
• View Type	Displays the type of the View entry.
MIB Object ID	Displays the OID of the View entry.

## Buttons

Create : Click to create a new SNMP view.
All : Click to choose all view items from view table.
Delete : Click to delete view items from view table.

Help: Click to display help web page.



# 4.9.1.3 SNMP Group

This page provide configure SNMP Group to control the network access by providing the users in various groups with different management rights via the Read View, Write View and Notify View; the screen in Figure 4-9-5 appears.

lobal Config	SNMP View	SNMP Group	SNMP User	SNMP Community			
Group Config	g						
Group N	lame:		(16 cha	racters maximum)			
Security	Model:	v1 •					
Security	/ Level:	noAuthNoPriv	•				Create
Read Vi	ew:	viewDefault 🔻					Clear
Write Vi	ew:	None 🔻					
Notify V	iew:	None 🔻					
Group Table							
Select G	roup Name	Security Model Security	Level Rea	d View Writ	e View	Notify View	Operation
			All De	lete Help			
Note:							
A group shou	uld contain a rea	d view, and the defa	ult read view is v	iewDefault.			

Figure 4-9-5: SNMP Group Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Group Config	
Group Name	Enter the SNMP Group name. The Group Name, Security Model and Security Level
	compose the identifier of the SNMP Group. The Groups with these three items the
	same are considered to be the same.
Security Model	Select the Security Model for the SNMP Group.
	• v1: SNMPv1 is defined for the group. In this model, the Community Name
	is used for authentication. SNMP v1 can be configured on the SNMP
	Community page directly.
	• v2c: SNMPv2c is defined for the group. In this model, the Community
	Name is used for authentication. SNMP v2c can be configured on the
	SNMP Community page directly.
	• v3: SNMPv3 is defined for the group. In this model, the USM mechanism
	is used for authentication. If SNMPv3 is enabled, the Security Level
	field is enabled for configuration.
Security Level	Select the Security Level for the SNMP v3 Group.
	noAuthNoPriv: No authentication and no privacy security level is used.



	authNoPriv: Only the authentication security level is used.
	• <b>authPriv:</b> Both the authentication and the privacy security levels are used.
Read View	Select the View to be the Read View. The management access is restricted to
	read-only, and changes cannot be made to the assigned SNMP View.
Write View	Select the View to be the Write View. The management access is writing only and
	changes can be made to the assigned SNMP View. The View defined both as the
	Read View and the Write View can be read and modified.
Notify View	Select the View to be the Notify View. The management station can receive trap
	messages of the assigned SNMP view generated by the Managed Switch's SNMP
	agent.

#### **Group Table**

Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding group. It is multi-optional.
Group Name	Displays the Group Name here.
Security Model	Displays the Security Model of the group.
Security Level	Displays the Security Level of the group.
Read View	Displays the Read View name in the entry.
Write View	Displays the Write View name in the entry.
Notify View	Displays the Notify View name in the entry.
Operation	Click the <b>Edit</b> button to modify the Views in the entry and click the <b>Modify</b> button to apply.



Every Group should contain a Read View. The default Read View is viewDefault.

#### Buttons

Create : Click to create a new SNMP group.

 			_
$\sim$		_	
6	е	а	Ľ
-	-	-	•

: Click to clear unsave information.



: Click to choose all SNMP group items from SNMP group table.



: Click to delete SNMP group items from SNMP group table.

Help : Click to display help web page.



## 4.9.1.4 SNMP User

The User in an SNMP Group can manage the Managed Switch via the management station software, the User and its Group has the same security level and access right; the screen in Figure 4-9-6 appears.

bal Config SN	NMP View	SNMP Group	SNMP User	SNMP Community
User Config				
User Name:			(16 characters m	aximum)
User Type:	Loca	User 🔻	Group N	lame:
Security Mod	del: v1	•	Security	/ Level: noAuthNoPriv
Auth Mode:	None	۲	Auth Pa	assword: (16 characters maximum)
Privacy Mode	e: None	•	Privacy	Password: (16 characters maximum)
			Create	Clear
User Table				
Select User I	Name	User Type	Group Name	Security Model Security Level Auth Mode Privacy Mode Operation
			All Delet	e Help

Figure 4-9-6: SNMP User Page Screenshot

Object	Description
User Config	
User Name	Enter the User Name here.
User Type	Select the type for the User.
	Local User: Indicates that the user is connected to a local SNMP engine.
	• Remote User: Indicates that the user is connected to a remote SNMP engine.
Group Name	Select the Group Name of the User. The User is classified to the corresponding
	Group according to its Group Name, Security Model and Security Level.
Security Model	Select the Security Model for the User.
Security Level	Select the Security Level for the SNMP v3 User.
Auth Mode	Select the Authentication Mode for the SNMP v3 User.
	None: No authentication method is used.
	• MD5: The port authentication is performed via HMAC-MD5 algorithm.
	SHA: The port authentication is performed via SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm). This
	authentication mode has a higher security than MD5 mode.



Auth Password	Enter the password for authentication.		
Privacy Mode	Select the Privacy Mode for the SNMP v3 User.		
	None: No privacy method is used.		
	• <b>DES:</b> DES encryption method is used.		
Privacy Password	Enter the Privacy Password.		
User Table			
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding User. It is multi-optional.		
User Name	Displays the name of the User.		
• User Type	Displays the User Type.		
Group Name	Displays the Group Name of the User.		
Security Model	Displays the Security Model of the User.		
Security Level	Displays the Security Level of the User.		
Auth Mode	Displays the Authentication Mode of the User.		
	Displays the Privacy Mode of the User		

 • Privacy Mode
 Displays the Privacy Mode of the User.

 • Operation
 Click the Edit button to modify the Group of the User and click the Modify button to apply.



The SNMP User and its Group should have the same Security Model and Security Level.

## Buttons

Create : Click to create a new SNMP user
Clear : Click to clear unsave information.
All : Click to choose all SNMP user items from SNMP user table.
Delete : Click to delete SNMP user items from SNMP user table.
Help: Click to display help web page.



# 4.9.1.5 SNMP Community

The SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c adopt community name authentication, the community name can limit access to the SNMP agent from SNMP network management station, functioning as a password. If SNMP v1 or SNMP v2c is employed, it can directly configure the SNMP Community on this page without configuring SNMP Group and User; the screen in Figure 4-9-7 appears.

lobal Config	SNMP View	SNMP Grou	p SNMP User	SNMP Community	
Community	Config				
Commu Access	nity Name: :	read-only	(16 char	acters maximum)	Create Clear
Community	Table				
Select	Community N	ame	Access	MIB View	Operation
		All	Delete	Help	
Note:					
The default I	VIB view of comm	unity is viewDe	fault.		

Figure 4-9-7: SNMP Community Page Screenshot

Object	Description		
Community Config			
Community Name	Enter the Community Name here.		
Access     Defines the access rights of the community.			
	• read-only: Management right of the Community is restricted to read-only, and		
	changes cannot be made to the corresponding View.		
	• read-write: Management right of the Community is read-write and changes can		
	be made to the corresponding View.		
MIB View	Select the MIB View for the community to access.		
Community Table			
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding Community. It is multi-optional.		
Community Name	Displays the Community Name here.		
Access	Displays the right of the Community to access the View.		
MIB View	Displays the Views which the Community can access.		
Operation	Click the <b>Edit</b> button to modify the MIB View and the Access right of the Community,		
	and then click the <b>Modify</b> button to apply.		





The default MIB View of SNMP Community is viewDefault

## Buttons





# 4.9.2 Notification

With the Notification function enabled, the Managed Switch can initiatively report to the management station about the important events that occur on the Views (e.g., the managed device is rebooted), which allows the management station to monitor and process the events in time.

The notification information includes the following two types:

Trap : Trap is the information that the managed device initiatively sends to the Network management station without request.

**Inform** : Inform packet is sent to inform the management station and ask for the reply. The Managed Switch will resend the inform request if it doesn't get the response from the management station during the Timeout interval, and it will terminate resending the inform request if the resending times reach the specified Retry times. The Inform type, employed on SNMPv2c and SNMPv3, has a higher security than the Trap type.

#### The screen in Figure 4-9-8 appears.

FGSW-4840S	Notification Config			
	Create Notification			
System	IP Address:		UDP Port:	162
Switching	User:			
VLAN	Security Model:	v1	<ul> <li>Security Level:</li> </ul>	noAuthNoPriv  Create
Spanning iree	Type:	Trap	•	Clear
QoS	Retry:		(1-255)	
ACL	Timeout:		sec (1-3600)	
SNMP				
SNMP Config	Notification Table			
Notification     RMON	Select IP Address	UDP Port User	Security Model Security Leve	I Type Timeout Retry Operation
Maintenance				
Save Config		All	Delete Help	
Logout				
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.				

Figure 4-9-8: SNMP Notification Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Notification Config	Provide SNMP notification config on this page.



# 4.9.2.1 Notification Config

This page provides SNMP notification function and the screen in Figure 4-9-9 appears.

otification	Config								
Create N	Votification								
IP Address:					UDP Port:		162		
User:									
Security Model:		v1 •		Security Level:		noAuthNoPriv		•	Create
Type:		Trap	•	T				Clear	
Retr	y:			(1-255)					
Tim	eout:			sec (1-3600)					
Notificat	ion Table								
Select	IP Address	UDP Port	User	Security Model	Security Level	Туре	Timeout	Retry	Operation
			All	Delete	Help				

Figure 4-9-9: Notification Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Create Notification	
IP Address	Enter the IP Address of the management Host.
UDP Port	Enter the number of the UDP port used to send notifications. The UDP port
	functions with the IP address for the notification sending. The default is 162.
• User	Enter the User name of the management station.
Security Model	Select the Security Model of the management station.
Security Level	Select the Security Level for the SNMP v3 User.
	noAuthNoPriv: No authentication and no privacy security level are used.
	• authNoPriv: Only the authentication security level is used.
	• <b>authPriv:</b> Both the authentication and the privacy security levels are used.
• Туре	Select the type for the notifications.
	• Trap: Indicates traps are sent.
	• Inform: The Inform type, employed on SNMPv2c and SNMPv3, has a higher
	security than the Trap type.
• Retry	Specify the amount of times the Managed Switch resends an inform request. The
	Managed Switch will resend the inform request if it doesn't get the response from
	the management station during the Timeout interval, and it will terminate resending
	the inform request if the resending times reach the specified <b>Retry</b> times.



Timeout	Specify the maximum time for the Managed Switch to wait for the response from
	the management station before resending a request.
Notification Table	
Select	Select the desired entry to delete the corresponding management station.
IP Address	Displays the IP Address of the management host.
UDP Port	Displays the UDP port used to send notifications.
• User	Displays the User name of the management station.
Security Model	Displays the Security Model of the management station.
Security Level	Displays the Security Level for the SNMP v3 User.
• Туре	Displays the type of the notifications.
Timeout	Displays the maximum time for the Managed Switch to wait for the response from
	the management station before resending a request.
• Retry	Displays the amount of times the Managed Switch resends an inform request.
Operation	Click the Edit button to modify the corresponding entry and click the Modify button
	to apply.

#### Buttons

Create : Click to create a new SNMP notification.
Clear : Click to clear unsave information.
All : Click to choose all SNMP notification items from SNMP notification table.
Delete : Click to delete SNMP notification items from SNMP notification table.
Help: Click to display help web page.

# 4.9.3 RMON

RMON (Remote Monitoring) based on SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) architecture, functions to monitor the network. RMON is currently a commonly used network management standard defined by Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), which is mainly used to monitor the data traffic across a network segment or even the entire network so as to enable the network administrator to take the protection measures in time to avoid any network malfunction. In addition, RMON MIB records network statistics information of network performance and malfunction periodically, based on which the management station can monitor network at any time effectively. RMON is helpful for network administrator to manage the large-scale network since it reduces the communication traffic between management station and managed agent.

#### **RMON Group**

This Managed Switch supports the following four RMON Groups defined on the RMON standard (RFC1757): History Group, Event Group, Statistic Group and Alarm Group.

RMON Group	Function
History Group	After a history group is configured, the Managed Switch collects and records network statistics
	Event Group is used to define PMON events. Alarms occur when an event is detected
Event Group	Event Group is used to define Kinow events. Alarms occur when an event is detected.
Statistic Group	Statistic Group is set to monitor the statistic of alarm variables on the specific ports.
Alarm Group	Alarm Group is configured to monitor the specific alarm variables. When the value of a monitored
	variable exceeds the threshold, an alarm event is generated, which triggers the Managed Switch to
	act in the set way.

#### The screen in Figure 4-9-10 appears.

SW-4840S	History Control	Event Config	Alarm Config			
	History Contro	ol Table				
tem	Select	Index	Port	Interval (sec)	Owner	Status
tching			Port 1 🔻	3		Disable 🔻
1		1	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
nning Tree		2	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
cast		3	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
		4	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
		5	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
<b>)</b>		6	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
/IP Config		7	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
ification		8	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
NC		9	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
tenance		10	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
Config		11	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
		12	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable

Figure 4-9-10: SNMP RMON Page Screenshot



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Histoty Control	Provide SNMP RMON history control on this page.
Event Config	Provide SNMP RMON event config on this page.
Alarm Config	Provide SNMP RMON alarm config on this page.

# 4.9.3.1 History Control

This page provides SNMP RMON History control function and the screen in Figure 4-9-11 appears.

History Control	Event Config	Alarm Config			
History Cont	trol Table				
Select	Index	Port	Interval (sec)	Owner	Status
		Port 1 🔻			Disable 🔻
	1	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	2	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	3	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	4	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	5	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	6	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	7	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	8	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	9	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	10	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	11	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
	12	Port 1	1800	monitor	Disable
		(	Apply Help		

Figure 4-9-11: History Control Page Screenshot

Object	Description		
History Control Table			
Select	Select the desired entry for configuration.		
• Index	Displays the index number of the entry.		
Port	Specify the port from which the history samples were taken.		
Interval (sec)	Specify the interval to take samplings from the port.		
Owner	Enter the name of the device or user that defined the entry.		
Status	Select Enable/Disable the corresponding sampling entry.		



#### Buttons



# 4.9.3.2 Event Config

This page provides SNMP RMON event config function and the screen in Figure 4-9-12 appears.

lis	story Contro	Event	Config Alarm Confi	g			
	Event Table	e					
	Select	Index	User	Description	Туре	Owner	Status
					None •		Disable 🔻
		1	public		None	monitor	Disable
		2	public		None	monitor	Disable
		3	public		None	monitor	Disable
		4	public		None	monitor	Disable
		5	public		None	monitor	Disable
		6	public		None	monitor	Disable
		7	public		None	monitor	Disable
		8	public		None	monitor	Disable
		9	public		None	monitor	Disable
		10	public		None	monitor	Disable
		11	public		None	monitor	Disable
		12	public		None	monitor	Disable
				Apply	Help		

### Figure 4-9-12: Event Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description				
Event Table					
Select	Select the desired entry for configuration.				
• Index	Displays the index number of the entry.				
• User	Enter the name of the User or the community to which the event belongs.				
Description	Give a description to the event for identification.				
• Туре	Select the event type, which determines the act way of the network device in				
	response to an event.				
	• None: No processing.				



	• Log: Logging the event.			
Notify: Sending trap messages to the management station.				
	<ul> <li>Log&amp;Notify: Logging the event and sending trap messages to the</li> </ul>			
	management station.			
• Owner	Enter the name of the device or user that defined the entry.			
Status	Select Enable/Disable the corresponding event entry.			

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



# 4.9.3.3 Alarm Config

This page provides SNMP RMON statistic group and alarm Group function; the screen in Figure 4-9-13 appears.

listory	Control	Event Config Al	arm Config									
Ala	m Table											
Sele	ct Index	Variable	Port	Sample Type	Rising Threshold	Rising Event	Falling Threshold	Falling Event	Alarm Type	Interval (sec)	Owner	Status
		DropEvents •	T	Absolute V		•		•	All 🔻			Disable 🔻
	1	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	2	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	3	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	4	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	5	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	6	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	7	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	8	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	9	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	10	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	11	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
	12	DropEvents	Port 1	Absolute	100	1	100	1	All	1800	monitor	Disable
						Apply	Help					
						, dda						

Figure 4-9-13: Alarm Config Page Screenshot

Object	Description
Alarm Table	
Select	Select the desired entry for configuration.
• Index	Displays the index number of the entry.
Variable	Select the alarm variables from the pull-down list.
Port	Select the port on which the Alarm entry acts.
Sample Type	Specify the sampling method for the selected variable and comparing the value
	against the thresholds.
	• Absolute: Compares the values directly with the thresholds at the end of the
	sampling interval.
	Delta: Subtracts the last sampled value from the current value. The difference in
	the values is compared to the threshold.
Rising Threshold	Enter the rising counter value that triggers the Rising Threshold alarm.
Rising Event	Select the index of the corresponding event which will be triggered if the sampled
	value is larger than the Rising Threshold.
Falling Threshold	Enter the falling counter value that triggers the Falling Threshold alarm.
Falling Event	Select the index of the corresponding event which will be triggered if the sampled
	value is lower than the Falling Threshold.
Alarm Type	Specify the type of the alarm.
	• All: The alarm event will be triggered either the sampled value exceeds the
	Rising Threshold or is under the Falling Threshold.



	• Rising: When the sampled value exceeds the Rising Threshold, an alarm
	event is triggered.
	• Falling: When the sampled value is under the Falling Threshold, an alarm
	event is triggered.
<ul> <li>Interval(sec)</li> </ul>	Enter the alarm interval time in seconds.
Owner	Enter the name of the device or user that defined the entry.
Status	Select Enable/Disable the corresponding alarm entry.



When alarm variables exceed the Threshold on the same direction continuously for several times, an alarm event will only be generated for the first time, that is, the Rising Alarm and Falling Alarm are triggered alternately for that the alarm following to Rising Alarm is certainly a Falling Alarm and vice versa.

#### Buttons



: Click to apply changes.



: Click to display help web page.


### 4.10 Maintenance

The Maintenance, assembling the commonly used system tools to manage the Managed Switch, provides the convenient method to locate and solve the network issue. The screen in Figure 4-10-1 appears.

-4840S CPU I	Monitor	Memory	Monitor									
CI	PU Monito	r										
	Run Time	: Osec										
ng												
g Tree	100							_				
to and	90											-
	80				_			_		_		-
	70			_	_		_			_		-
	60											
ince	50											
Monitor	50											
	40											-
Diagnostics	30									-		-
k Diagnostic	20				_					_		+
nfig	10											_
	0											
			-								61 m <sup>2</sup>	
	Current l	Jtilization	MAX Utiliza	ation	MIN Utili	zation	Averag	je Utiliza	ation			
	0	%	0%		0%	5		0%				
					Monitor		Stop					
t © 2014												



This section has the following items:

- System Monitor Provide system monitor function on this page.
- Log Provide log function on this page.
- Device Diagnostics
  Provide device diagnostics function on this page.
- **Network Diagnostics** Provide network diagnostics function on this page.



### 4.10.1 System Monitor

The System Monitor functions to display the utilization status of the memory and the CPU of Managed Switch via the data graph. The CPU utilization rate and the memory utilization rate should fluctuate stably around a specific value. If the CPU utilization rate or the memory utilization rate increases markedly, please detect whether the network is being attacked; the screen in Figure 4-10-2 appears.

10S CPU Moni	itor Memory	Monitor				
CPU N	Monitor					
Ru	n Time: Osec					
-						
10	0					
90	)					
80	)					
70	)					
60	)					
50	)					
40	)					
ics 30						
stic or						
21						
10	)					
0						
Cu	rrent Utilization	MAX Utilization	MIN Utilization	n Averag	e Utilization	
	0%	0%	0%		0%	
			Manitar	Sten		
			Ivionitor	Stop		

Figure 4-10-2: System Monitor Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
CPU Monitor	Provide CPU monitor function on this page.
Memory Monitor	Provide memory monitor function on this page.



### 4.10.1.1 CPU Monitor

Click the **Monitor** button to enable the Managed Switch to monitor and display its CPU utilization rate every four seconds; the screen in Figure 4-10-3 appears.

PU I	Nonito	r																
Ru	n Time	: Osec																
1(	00																	
90	)			-	-		-	-	-					_	_	_		
80	)				-		-	-	t	-								
70	2																	
50	, ,																	
4(	)			_	-			-	-				-		_	_		
30	)		-	-	-		-	-	-	-	_			_	_	_		
20	)	-		-	-	-	-	-	+	-	-		_	-	-	_		
10	)																	
Сι	irrent l	Jtilizati	on N	IAX Uti	ilizatio	on	MI	N Uti	lizati	on /	Avera	ge Ut	ilizat	ion			 	
	0	%		09	%			09	%			0%						

Figure 4-10-3: CPU Monitor Page Screenshot

### Buttons

Monitor : Click to start CPU monitor function.

Stop

: Click to stop CPU monitor function.



### 4.10.1.2 Memory Monitor

Click the **Monitor** button to enable the Managed Switch to monitor and display its memory utilization rate every four seconds; the screen in Figure 4-10-4 appears.

mory Monitor						
Run Time: 0sec						
100						
90						
80						
70						
60						
50						
40					-	
30						
20						
10						
0						
Current Utilizatio	on MAX Utilization	MIN Utilization	Average Utiliza	ation		
0%	0%	0%	0%			

Figure 4-10-4: Memory Monitor Page Screenshot

### Buttons

Monitor : Click to start Memory monitor function.

Stop

: Click to stop Memory monitor function.



### 4.10.2 Log

The Log system of Managed Switch can record, classify and manage the system information effectively, providing powerful support for network administrator to monitor network operation and diagnose malfunction; the screen in Figure 4-10-5 appears.

10010-10100							
	Log Ir	formation					
System	Index	Time	Module		Severity	Content	
Gwitching			All Module	•	All Level 🔻		
LAN	1	2006-01-01 18:46:40	User		level_3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	-
panning Tree	2	2006-01-01 18:12:49	User		level_3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
ulticast	3	2006-01-01 17:36:35	User		level_3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
oS	4	2006-01-01 16:25:32	User		level_3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
CL	5	2006-01-01 15:40:17	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
NMP	6	2006-01-01 15:01:10	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
laintenance	7	2006-01-01 12:58:45	User		level_3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
System Monitor	8	2006-01-01 11:41:13	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
Log	9	2006-01-01 11:00:29	User		level_3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
Device Diagnostics	10	2006-01-01 10:47:23	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
Network Diagnostics	11	2006-01-01 10:29:53	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
ave Config	12	2006-01-01 10:04:24	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
A22	13	2006-01-01 09:50:04	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
ogout	14	2006-01-01 09:26:08	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
	15	2006-01-01 08:59:30	User		level 3	User admin login the web by admin on web (10.1.0.137).	
	16	2006-01-01 08:00:19	MSTP		level 6	Disable STP on port 52.	
	17	2006-01-01 08:00:19	MSTP		level 6	Disable STP on port 51.	
	18	2006-01-01 08:00:19	MSTP		level 6	Disable STP on port 50	-
Copyright© 2014 PLANET Technology 20rooration. All rights	Note: 1.Ther 2.This	e are 8 severity levels m page displays logs in ti	narked with va ne log buffer, a	lue O and a	Refresh -7. The smaller t most 512 logs	Help value has the higher priority. are displayed.	

### Figure 4-10-5: Log Page Screenshot

### The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Log Table	Provide log table function on this page.
Local Log	Provide local log function on this page.
Remote Log	Provide remote log function on this page.
Backup Log	Provide backup log function on this page.



### 4.10.2.1 Log Table

The Managed Switch supports logs output to two directions, namely, log buffer and log file, the information in log buffer will be lost after the Managed Switch is rebooted or powered off, whereas the information in log file will be kept effective even the Managed Switch is rebooted or powered off. The Log Table displays the system log information in log buffer and the screen in Figure 4-10-6 appears.

Log Table	Local Log Rem	ote Log 🛛 🛛 Ba	ckup Log	
Log Inf	ormation			
Index	Time	Module	Severity	Content
		All Module	▼ All Level ▼	
96	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 15.
97	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 14.
98	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 13.
99	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 12.
100	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 11.
101	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 10.
102	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 9.
103	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 8.
104	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 7.
105	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 6.
106	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 5.
107	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 4.
108	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 3.
109	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 2.
110	2006-01-01 08:00:00	MSTP	level_6	Disable STP on port 1.
111	2006-01-01 08:00:00	LACP	level_6	LACP register OK.
112	2006-01-01 08:00:00	IGMP	level_6	IGMP Snooping initialization OK.
113	2006-01-01 08:00:00	QoS	level_6	QoS module initialization OK.
			Refres	h Help

#### Figure 4-10-6: Log Table Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Log Information	
• Index	Displays the index of the log information.
• Time	Displays the time when the log event occurs. The log can get the correct time after
	configure on the System ->System Info->System Time Web management page.
Module	Displays the module which the log information belongs to. To select a item from the
	drop-down list to display the corresponding log information.
Severity	Displays the severity level of the log information. To select a severity level to display
	the log information whose severity level value is the same or smaller.
Content	Displays the content of the log information.





The logs are classified into eight levels based on severity. The higher the information severity

is, the lower the corresponding level is.

This page displays logs in the log buffer, and at most 511 logs are displayed.

### Buttons



esh : Click to refresh current web page.



: Click to display help web page.



### 4.10.2.2 Local Log

The Local Log is the log information saved in Managed Switch. By default, all system logs are saved in log buffer and the logs with severities from level\_0 to level\_4 are saved in log file meanwhile; the screen in Figure 4-10-7 appears.

Local Lo	g Config	romoto Log	Edonap Log		
Sel	ect	Channel	Sever	ity	Status
	)			•	•
	)	Log Buffer	level	6	Enable
	]	Log File	level	2	Disable
Note:		(	Apply Help		
1.Local lo	og includes 2 c	hannels: log buffer	and log file.		
2.There a	re 8 severity le	evels marked with v	alues 0-7. The smalle	r value has the highe	r priority.

### Figure 4-10-7: Local Log Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Local Log Config	
Select	Select the desired entry to configure the corresponding local log.
Channel / Log Buffer	Indicates the RAM for saving system log. The inforamtion in the log buffer is
	displayed on the Log Table page. It will be lost when the Managed Switch is
	restarted.
Channel / Log File	Indicates the flash sector for saving system log. The inforamtion in the log file will
	not be lost after the Managed Switch is restarted and can be exported on the
	Backup Log page.
Severity	Specify the severity level of the log information output to each channel. Only the
	log with the same or smaller severity level value will be output.
• Status	Enable/Disable the channel.

### Buttons

Apply : Click to apply changes.

Help : Click to display help web page.



### 4.10.2.3 Remote Log

The Remote log feature enables the Managed Switch to send system logs to the Log Server. Log Server is to centralize the system logs from various devices for the administrator to monitor and manage the whole network; the screen in Figure 4-10-8 appears.

Select	Index	Host IP	UDP Port	Severity	Status
				<b>•</b>	•
	1	0.0.0.0	514	level_6	Disable
	2	0.0.0.0	514	level_6	Disable
	3	0.0.0.0	514	level_6	Disable
	4	0.0.0.0	514	level_6	Disable
		Apply	Help		

#### Figure 4-10-8: Remote Log Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Log Host	
Select	Select the desired entry to configure the corresponding remote log.
• Index	Displays the index of the log host. The Managed Switch supports 4 log hosts.
Host IP	Configure the IP for the log host.
UDP Port	Displays the UDP port used for receiving/sending log information. Here we use the standard port 514.
Severity	Specify the severity level of the log information sent to each log host. Only the log with the same or smaller severity level value will be sent to the corresponding log host.
Status	Enable/Disable the log host.



The Log Server software is not provided. If necessary, please download it on the Internet

#### Buttons

Apply

Help

: Click to apply changes.

: Click to display help web page.



### 4.10.2.4 Backup Log

The Backup Log feature enables the system logs saved in the Managed Switch to be output as a file for device diagnosis and statistics analysis, when a critical error results in the breakdown of the system, it can export the logs to get some related important information about the error for device diagnosis after the Managed Switch is restarted. The screen in Figure 4-10-9 appears.

.og Table	Local Log	Remote Log	Backup Log
Backup	Log		
Clic	k the button he	ere to backup the	log file:
			Backup Log Help
Note:			
It will take	e a few minute:	s to backup the lo	g file. Please wait without any operation.

Figure 4-10-9: Backup Log Page Screenshot

#### The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Backup Log	
Backup Log	Click the <b>Backup Log</b> button to save the log as a file to computer.



It will take a few minutes to back up the log file. Please wait without any operation.

#### **Buttons**

Backup Log: Click to backup log files.

Help

Click to display help web page.



### 4.10.3 Device Diagnostics

This page provides Cable Test and Loopback functions for device diagnose and the screen in Figure 4-10-10 appears.

V-4840S	e Test 🔋 Loopi	pack		
c	able Test			
n F	Port: 🔻			Unit: meter
ning	Pair	Status	Length	Error
	Pair-A			
ig Tree	Pair-B		5.53	0.00
st	Pair-C		1 <u>2</u> 22)	11 <u>11</u>
<u></u>	Pair-D			9 <del>35</del>
		Γ.	est Hein	
iance				
m Monitor No	ote:			
1.	The interval betv	veen two cable test for one	e port must be more than 3 sec	onds.
	The result is mo	ire reasonable when the c	able pair is in the open status.	
e Diagnostics 2.	ine recalling ine			
e Diagnostics 2. Drk Diagnostics 3.	The result is jus	t for your information.		
e Diagnostics 2. ork Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. rk Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. rk Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. rk Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. rk Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. ork Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. ork Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. ork Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. rk Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.
e Diagnostics 2. rk Diagnostics 3. onfig 4.	The result is jus If the port is 100	t for your information. M and its connection statu	s is normal, cable test can't get	the length of the cable.

### Figure 4-10-10: Device Diagnostics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Cable Test	Provide cable test function on this page.	
Loopback	Provide loopback function on this page.	



### 4.10.3.1 Cable Test

The Managed Switch supports logs output to two directions, namely, log buffer and log file, the information in log buffer will be lost after the Managed Switch is rebooted or powered off, whereas the information in log file will be kept effective even the Managed Switch is rebooted or powered off. The Log Table displays the system log information in log buffer and the screen in Figure 4-10-11 appears.

Cable Test			Unit: motor
Poit.	Status	Longth	Fror
	Status	Length	LIIU
Pair-A			
Pair-B			
Pair-C		-	
Pair-D			
	Te	st Help	

- 3. The result is just for your information.
- 4. If the port is 100M and its connection status is normal, cable test can't get the length of the cable.

#### Figure 4-10-11: Cable Test Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Cable Test		
Port	Select the port for cable testing.	
• Pair	Displays the Pair number.	
Status	Displays the connection status of the cable connected to the port. The test result	
	the cable include normal, close, open or impedance.	
Length	If the connection status is normal, here displays the length range of the cable.	
• Error	If the connection status is close, open or impedance, here displays the error length of	
	the cable.	

### Buttons

Test : Click to start the cable test function.

Help

Click to display help web page.



The interval between two cable tests for one port must be more than 3 seconds.
 The result is more reasonable when the cable pair is in the open status.
 The test result is just for your reference.
 If the port is 100Mbps and its connection status is normal, cable test can't get the length of the cable.

### 4.10.3.2 Loopback

The Loopback test function, looping the sender and the receiver of the signal, is used to test whether the port of the Managed Switch is available as well as to check and analyze the physical connection status of the port to help to locate and solve network malfunctions. The screen in Figure 4-10-12 appears.

Cable Test	Loopback					
Loopback T	/09					
Loopback 1)	hhe					
Loopba	ck Type: 🛛 🖲 Ir	iternal O Exter	nal			
Loopback Po	ort					
🗆 1	2	3	<b>4</b>	5	6	
7	8	9	10	11	12	
13	14	15	16	17	18	
19	20	21	22	23	24	
25	26	27	28	29	30	
31	32	33	34	35	36	
37	38	39	□ 40	□ 41	42	
43	44	45	46	47	48	
49	50					
		Test	Help			
Loopback R	esult					
Port:N//	A					
Type:N/	/A					
Result:	N/A					



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description
Loopback Type	



Loopback Type	Internal: select Internal to test whether the port is available.		
	External: select External to test whether the device connected to the port of the		
	Managed Switch is available.		
Loopback Port			
Loopback Port	Select the desired port for loopback test.		
Loopback Result			
• Port: N/A	Display the port information.		
• Type: N/A	Display the loopback test type result.		
• Result: N/A	Display the loopback test result.		

### Buttons

Test : Click to start the cable test function.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



### 4.10.4 Network Diagnostics

This page provides Ping test and Tracert test functions for network diagnose and the screen in Figure 4-10-13 appears.

FGSW-4840S	Ping Tracert		
System Switching VLAN Spanning Tree Multicast QoS	Ping Config Destination IP: Ping Times: Data Size: Interval:	192.168.0.1 4 (1-10) 64 byte (1-1024) 100 millisec (100-1000)	Ping Help
ACL SNMP Maintenance • System Monitor • Log • Device Diagnostics • Network Diagnostics	Ping Result		
Save Config			
Copyright © 2014 PLANET Technology Corporation. All rights reserved.			

Figure 4-10-13: Network Diagnostics Page Screenshot

The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Ping Test	Provide ping test function on this page.	
• Tracert	Provide tracert function on this page.	



### 4.10.4.1 Ping Test

The Ping test function, testing the connectivity between the Managed Switch and one node of the network, facilitates to test the network connectivity and reachability of the host so as to locate the network malfunctions. The screen in Figure 4-10-14 appears.

Ping Tracert		
Ping Config		
Destination IP: Ping Times: Data Size: Interval:	192.168.0.1         4       (1-10)         64       byte (1-1024)         100       millisec (100-1000)	Ping Help
Ping Result		



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Ping Config		
Destination IP	Enter the IP address of the destination node for Ping test.	
Ping Times	Enter the amount of times to send test data during Ping testing. The default value is	
	recommended.	
Data Size	Enter the size of the sending data during Ping testing. The default value is	
	recommended.	
Interval	Specify the interval to send ICMP request packets. The default value is	
	recommended.	
Ping Result		
Ping Result	Display the ping result.	

### Buttons

Ping : Click to start the ping function.

Help

: Click to display help web page.



### 4.10.4.2 Tracert

The Tracert test function is used to test the connectivity of the gateways during its journey from the source to destination of the test data. When malfunctions occur to the network, it can locate trouble spot of the network with this tracert test. The screen in Figure 4-10-15 appears.

Ping Tracert		
T		
Tracert Config		
Destination IP:	192.168.0.100	Tracert
Max Hop:	4 Hop (1-30)	Help
Tracert Result		



The page includes the following fields:

Object	Description	
Tracert Config		
Destination IP	Enter the IP address of the destination device.	
• Max Hop	Specify the maximum number of the route hops the test data can pass through.	
Tracert Result		
Tracert Result	Display the tracert result.	

#### Buttons

Tracert : Click to start the tracert function.

Help : Click to display help web page.



## 4.11 Save Config

This page provides configuration save function of the Managed Switch; the screens in Figure 4-11-1 & Figure 4-11-2 & Figure 4-11-3 appear.



Figure 4-11-1: Save Config Page Screenshot

Save Config
It will take a long time to save the config. Please wait without any operation.

Figure 4-11-2: Save Config Page Screenshot



Figure 4-11-3: Save Config Successfully Page Screenshot



## 4.12 Logout

This page provides logout function of the Managed Switch; the screen in Figure 4-12-1 appears.



Figure 4-12-1: Logout Page Screenshot



# **5. COMMAND LINE INTERFACE**

### 5.1 Accessing the CLI

When accessing the management interface for the Managed Switch via a Telnet connection, the Managed Switch can be managed by entering command keywords and parameters at the prompt. Using the Managed Switch's command-line interface (CLI) is very similar to entering commands on a UNIX system. This chapter describes how to use the Command Line Interface (CLI).

## 5.2 Telnet Login

The Managed Switch supports telnet for remote management, the Managed Switch asks for user name and password for remote login when using telnet; please use "**admin**" for username & password.

EX Telnet 192.168.0.100	- 🗆 🗙
******************** User Access Login *********************	
User:admin Password:	
FGSW-4840S>#2006-01-01 08:32:54,[User]/3/Login the CLI by admin on vty0 <192 .0.188>.	.168
FGSW-4840S>	
	-

Figure 5-1: Telnet Login Screen



# 6. COMMAND LINE MODE

The CLI groups all the commands in appropriate modes according to the nature of the command. A sample of the CLI command modes are described below. Each of the command modes supports specific software commands.

The CLI is divided into different command modes: User EXEC Mode, Privileged EXEC Mode, Global Configuration Mode, Interface Configuration Mode and VLAN Database (VLAN Configuration Mode). Interface Configuration Mode can also be divided into Interface Ethernet, Interface link-aggregation and some other modes, which is shown as the following diagram.



The following table gives detailed information about the Accessing path, Prompt of each mode and how to exit the current mode and access the next mode.

Mode	Accessing Path	Prompt	Logout or Access the next mode
User EXEC Mode	Primary mode once it is connected with the Managed Switch.	FGSW-4840S>	Use the <b>exit</b> command to disconnect the Managed Switch.
			Privileged EXEC mode.
Privileged EXEC Mode	Use the <b>enable</b> command to enter this mode from User EXEC mode.	FGSW-4840S#	Use the <b>exit</b> command to disconnect the Managed Switch.
			Enter the <b>disable or the exit</b> command to return to User EXEC mode.
			Enter <b>configure</b> command to access Global Configuration mode.
Global Configuration Mode	Use the <b>configure</b> command to enter this mode from Privileged EXEC mode.		Use the <b>exit</b> or the <b>end</b> command or press <b>Ctrl+Z</b> to return to Privileged EXEC mode.
		FGSW-4840S (config)#	Use the <b>interface</b> <i>type number</i> command to access interface Configuration mode.
			Use the <b>vian database</b> to access VLAN Configuration mode.



Interface Configuration Mode	Use the <b>interface</b> <i>type</i> <i>number</i> command to enter this mode from Global Configuration mode.	FGSW-4840S (config-if)#	Use the <b>end</b> command or press <b>Ctrl+Z</b> to return to Privileged EXEC mode. Enter <b>exit</b> command to return to Global Configuration mode. A port number must be specified in the <b>interface</b> command.
VLAN Configuration Mode	Use the <b>vlan database</b> command to enter this mode from Global Configuration mode.	FGSW-4840S (config-vlan)#	Use the <b>end</b> command or press <b>Ctrl+Z</b> to return to Privileged EXEC mode. Enter the <b>exit</b> command to return to Global configuration mode.

Table 6-1: CLI Command Modes



The user is automatically in User EXEC Mode after the connection between the PC and the Managed Switch is established by a telnet connection.

Each command mode has its own set of specific commands. To configure some commands, you should access the corresponding command mode firstly.

#### Global Configuration Mode:

In this mode, global commands are provided, such as the Spanning Tree, Schedule Mode and so on.

### Interface Configuration Mode:

In this mode, users can configure one or several ports, different ports corresponds to different commands.

- a). Interface Ethernet: Configure parameters for an Ethernet port, such as Duplex-mode, flow control status.
- b). Interface range Ethernet: Configure parameters for several Ethernet ports.
- c). Interface link-aggregation: Configure parameters for a link-aggregation, such as broadcast storm.
- d). Interface range link-aggregation: Configure parameters for multi-trunks.
- e). Interface vlan: Configure parameters for the vlan-port.

### Vlan Configuration Mode:

In this mode, users can create a VLAN and add a specified port to the VLAN.



Some commands are global, that means they can be performed in all modes:

**show**: display all information of Managed Switch, for example: statistic information, port information, VLAN information.

history: Display the commands history.





The CLI provides the following modes:

### **User EXEC Mode**

When the operator logs into the CLI, the User Mode is the initial mode. The User Mode contains a limited set of commands. The command prompt shown at this level is:

Command Prompt: FGSW-4840S >

### Privileged EXEC Mode

To have access to the full suite of commands, the operator must enter the Privileged Mode. The Privileged Mode requires password authentication. From Privileged Mode, the operator can issue any Exec command to enter the Global Configuration mode. The command prompt shown at this level is:

Command Prompt: FGSW-4840S #

### **Global Configuration Mode**

This mode permits the operator to make modifications to the running configuration. General setup commands are grouped in this mode. From the Global Configuration mode, the operator can enter the Interface Configuration mode. The command prompt at this level is:

### Command Prompt: FGSW-4840S (Config)#

From the Global Config mode, the operator may enter the following configuration modes:

## 6.1 User EXEC Mode Commands

### 6.1.1 broadcast command

### **Description:**

Write message to all users logged in

#### Syntax:

broadcast WORD - Message to broadcast

### 6.1.2 enable command

#### **Description:**

Enter privileged EXEC mode

### Syntax:

enable



### 6.1.3 logout command

### **Description:**

Logout the system

### Syntax:

logout

### 6.1.4 loopback Command

### **Description:**

The loopback interface command is used to test whether the port is available or not

### Syntax:

loopback interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port } { internal | external }

### 6.1.5 ping command

### **Description:**

The ping command is used to test the connectivity between the Managed Switch and one node of the network

### Syntax:

ping A.B.C.D - Destination IP address

### 6.1.6 tracert command

### **Description:**

The tracert command is used to test the connectivity of the gateways during its journey from the source to destination of the test data

### Syntax:

tracert {ip-addr} [maxHops]

## 6.1.7 exit command

### **Description:**

The exit command is used to return to the previous Mode from the current Mode

### Syntax:

exit



### 6.1.8 history command

### **Description:**

The history command is used to show the latest 20 commands that entered in the current mode since the Managed Switch is powered. Also clear all the commands that entered

#### Syntax:

history / history clear

## 6.2 Privileged Mode Commands

### 6.2.1 broadcast command

### **Description:**

Write message to all users logged in

#### Syntax:

broadcast WORD - Message to broadcast

### 6.2.2 configure command

### **Description:**

The configure command is used to access Global Configuration Mode from Privileged EXEC Mode

#### Syntax:

configure

### 6.2.3 copy command

#### **Description:**

Copy from one file to another

#### Syntax:

copy running-config startup-config

copy startup-config tftp ip-address ip-addr filename name

copy tftp startup-config ip-address ip-addr filename name

## 6.2.4 disable command

### **Description:**

The disable command is used to return to User EXEC Mode from Privileged EXEC Mode

### Syntax:

disable



### 6.2.5 firmware command

### **Description:**

The firmware command is used to upgrade the Managed Switch system file via the TFTP server

### Syntax:

firmware upgrade ip-address ip-addr filename name

## 6.2.6 logout command

### **Description:**

Logout the system

### Syntax:

logout

## 6.2.7 loopback Command

### **Description:**

The loopback interface command is used to test whether the port is available or not

### Syntax:

loopback interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port } { internal | external }

## 6.2.8 ping command

### **Description:**

The ping command is used to test the connectivity between the Managed Switch and one node of the network

### Syntax:

ping A.B.C.D - Destination IP address

## 6.2.9 reboot command

### Description:

The command is used to reboot the Managed Switch. To avoid damage, please don't turn off the device while rebooting

### Syntax:

reboot



### 6.2.10 reset command

#### **Description:**

The reset command is used to reset the Managed Switch's software. After resetting, all configuration of the Managed Switch will restore to the factory defaults and your current settings will be lost

#### Syntax:

reset

### 6.2.11 tracert command

### **Description:**

The tracert command is used to test the connectivity of the gateways during its journey from the source to destination of the

test data

### Syntax:

tracert {ip-addr} [maxHops]

### 6.2.12 Clear command

### **Description:**

Clear statistic

### Syntax:

clear counters

clear IP

clear logging [ buffer | flash ]

### 6.2.13 exit command

### **Description:**

The exit command is used to return to the previous Mode from the current Mode

#### Syntax:

exit

## 6.2.14 history command

### Description:

The history command is used to show the latest 20 commands that entered in the current mode since the Managed Switch is powered. Also clear all the commands that entered

### Syntax:

history / history clear



## 6.2.15 show command

### **Description:**

Display system information

### Syntax:

show access-list	- Display ACL information
show bandwidth	- Display bandwidth rate configuration
show cable-diagnostics	- Display Cable diagnostics results
show etherchannel	- Display EtherChannel information
show interface	- Display interface status and configuration
show ip	- Display IP information
show lacp	- Display Port channel information
show logging	- Display Log information
show loopback-detection	- Display Loopback detection information
show mac	- Display MAC information
show monitor	- Display Monitor information
show port	- Display Ethernet port configuration
show process	- Display Cpu statistic
show qos	- Display QoS information
show rmon	- Display SNMP RMON information
show running-config	- Display current operating configuration
show snmp-server	- Display SNMP information
show spanning-tree	- Display Spanning Tree information
show storm-control	- Display storm control configuration
show system-info	- Display System information
show system-time	- Display current system time
show user	- Display User account information
show vlan	- Display VLAN information
show voice	- Display Voice VLAN configuration



## 6.3 Global Config Mode Commands

### 6.3.1 access-list Command

### **Description:**

Add an access list entry

#### Syntax:

access-list create access-list-num

access-list extended acl-id rule rule-id { deny | permit } [[ sip source-ip ] smask source-ip-mask ] [[ dip destination-ip] dmask destination-ip-mask ] [ s-port s-port ] [ d-port d-port ] [ protocol protocol ]

no access-list extended acl-id rule rule-id

access-list policy action policy-name acl-id

no access-list policy action policy-name acl-id

access-list policy name name

no access-list policy name name

access-list standard acl-id rule rule-id { deny | permit } [[ sip source-ip ] smask source-ip-mask] [[ dip destination-ip ]

dmask destination-ip-mask ]

no access-list standard acl-id rule rule-id

### 6.3.2 Contact-info Command

#### **Description:**

The contact-info command is used to configure the system contact information. To clear the system contact information, please use no contact-info command

#### Syntax:

contact-info contact\_info

no contact-info

## 6.3.3 enable Command

#### **Description:**

Configure enable password

### Syntax:

enable password - Assign the privileged level password



### 6.3.4 hostname Command

#### **Description:**

The hostname command is used to configure the system name. To clear the system name information, please use no hostname command

#### Syntax:

hostname hostname

no hostname

### 6.3.5 interface Command

#### **Description:**

Enter interface configuration mode

#### Syntax:

interface fastEthernet (1/0/1-1/0/48) - FastEthernet interface number

interface gigabitEthernet (1/0/49-1/0/52) - GigabitEthernet interface number

interface range fastEthernet (1/0/1-48) - FastEthernet interface number list

interface range gigabitEthernet (1/0/49-52) - GigabitEthernet interface number list

interface vlan<1-4094> - VLAN interface number

## 6.3.6 ip Command

#### **Description:**

IP address commands

#### Syntax:

ip dhcp filtering

no ip dhcp filtering

ip http secure-server

no ip http secure-server

ip http secure-server download certificate ssl-cert ip-address ip-addr

ip http secure-server download key ssl-key ip-address ip-addr

ip igmp snooping

no ip igmp snooping

ip management-vlan vlan-id

ip ssh download { v1 | v2 } key-file ip-address ip-addr

ip ssh max-client num



no ip ssh max-client

ip ssh server

no ip ssh server

ip ssh timeout value

no ip ssh timeout

ip ssh version { v1 | v2 }

no ip ssh version { v1 | v2 }

### 6.3.7 lacp Command

#### **Description:**

LACP configuration

#### Syntax:

lacp system-priority pri

no lacp system-priority

### 6.3.8 location Command

### **Description:**

The location command is used to configure the system location. To clear the system location information, please use no location command

#### Syntax:

location location

no location

### 6.3.9 logging Command

#### **Description:**

Modify message logging facilities

#### Syntax:

logging buffer level

no logging buffer

logging file flash level

no logging file flash

logging host index idx host-ip level

no logging host index idx



### 6.3.10 loopback-detection Command

#### **Description:**

The loopback-detection command is used to enable the loopback detection function globally. To disable it, please use no loopback detection command

#### Syntax:

loopback-detection

no loopback-detection

loopback-detection interval interval-time

loopback-detection recovery-time recovery-time

### 6.3.11 mac Command

#### Description:

Global MAC configuration subcommands

#### Syntax:

mac access-list access-list-num

no mac access-list access-list-num

mac address-table aging-time aging-time

no mac address-table aging-time

mac address-table filtering mac mac-addr vid vid

no mac address-table filtering {[ mac mac-addr ] [ vid vid ]}

mac address-table static mac mac-addr vid vid interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port }

no mac address-table static { mac mac-addr | vid vid | mac mac-addr vid vid | interface { fastEthernet port } }

### 6.3.12 monitor Command

#### **Description:**

Monitoring different system events

#### Syntax:

monitor session session\_num destination interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port }

no monitor session session\_num

monitor session session\_num source interface { fastEthernet port-list | gigabitEthernet port-list } mode

no monitor session session\_num source interface { fastEthernet port-list | gigabitEthernet port-list } mode



### 6.3.13 port-channel Command

### **Description:**

EtherChannel configuration

### Syntax:

port-channel load-balance { src-dst-mac | src-dst-ip }

no port-channel load-balance

### 6.3.14 qos Command

### **Description:**

Configure quality of service (QoS) on the device

### Syntax:

qos cos no qos cos qos dscp no qos dscp qos queue cos-map { tag/cos-id } { tc-id } no qos queue cos-map qos queue dscp-map { dscp-list } { tc-id } no qos queue dscp-map qos queue mode { sp | wrr | sp+wrr | equ } no qos queue mode

## 6.3.15 rmon Command

### **Description:**

SNMP RMON configuration

### Syntax:

rmon alarm index interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port } [ alarm-variable { drop | revbyte | revpkt | bpkt | mpkt | crc-lign | undersize | oversize | fragment | jabber | collision | 64 | 65-127 | 128-511 | 512-1023 | 1024-10240 }] [ s-type { absolute | delta} ] [ rising-threshold r-hold ] [ rising-event-index r-event ] [ falling-threshold f-hold ] [ falling-event-index f-event ] [ a-type { rise | fall | all }] [ owner owner-name ] [ interval interval ]

no rmon alarm index

rmon event index [ user user-name ] [ description descript ] [ type { none | log | notify | log-notify }] [ owner owner-name ]

no rmon event index

rmon history index interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port } [ interval seconds ] [ owner owner-name ]



### 6.3.16 snmp-server Command

#### **Description:**

SNMP server configuration commands

#### Syntax:

- snmp-server
- no snmp-server
- snmp-server community name { read-only | read-write } mib-view
- no snmp-server community name
- snmp-server engineID { [ local local-engineID ] [ remote remote-engineID ] }
- no snmp-server engineID

snmp-server group name [ smode { v1 | v2c | v3 }] [ slev { noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv | authPriv }] [ read read-view ] [ write write-view ] [ notify notify-view ]

no snmp-server group name smode { v1 | v2c | v3 } slev { noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv | authPriv }

snmp-server host ip udp-port user-name [ smode { v1 | v2c | v3 }] [ slev { noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv | authPriv }] [ type

- { trap | inform }] [ retries retries ] [ timeout timeout ]
- no snmp-server host ip user-name
- snmp-server traps { bandwidth-control | cpu | flash | ipaddr-change |loopback-detection | storm-control | spanning-tree }

no snmp-server traps { bandwidth-control | cpu | flash | ipaddr-change |loopback-detection | storm-control | spanning-tree }

snmp-server user name { local | remote } group-name [ smode { v1 | v2c | v3 }] [ slev { noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv |

authPriv }] [ cmode { none | MD5 | SHA }] [ cpwd confirm-pwd ] [ emode { none | DES }] [ epwd encrypt-pwd ]

no snmp-server user name

snmp-server view name mib-oid { include | exclude }

no snmp-server view name mib-oid



## 6.3.17 spanning tree Command

### **Description:**

Configure spanning tree subsystem

### Syntax:

- spanning-tree
- no spanning-tree
- spanning-tree hold-count value
- no spanning-tree hold-count
- spanning-tree max-hops value
- no spanning-tree max-hops
- spanning-tree mode { stp | rstp | mstp }
- no spanning-tree mode
- spanning-tree mst configuration
- no spanning-tree mst configuration
- spanning-tree mst instance instance-id priority pri
- no spanning-tree mst instance instance-id priority
- spanning-tree mst instance instance-id {[ port-priority pri ] | [ cost cost ]}
- no spanning-tree mst instance instance-id
- spanning-tree priority pri
- no spanning-tree priority
- spanning-tree tc-defend threshold threshold period period
- no spanning-tree tc-defend
- spanning-tree timer {[ forward-time forward-time ] [ hello-time hello-time ] [ max-age max-age ]}
- no spanning-tree timer



### 6.3.18 system-time Command

#### **Description:**

System-time configuration

#### Syntax:

system-time dst date {smonth} {sday} {stime} {emonth} {eday} {etime} [offset]

no system-time dst

system-time dst predefined {USA | Australia | Europe| New-Zealand}

no system-time dst

system-time dst recurring {sweek} {sday} {smonth} {stime} {eweek} {eday} {emonth} {etime} [offset]

no system-time dst

system-time manual time (Set the date and time manually, MM/DD/YYYY-HH:MM:SS)

system-time ntp { timezone } { ntp-server } { backup-ntp-server } { fetching-rate }

### 6.3.19 user Command

#### **Description:**

Add a new user or modify an exist user

#### Syntax:

user name user-name password password [ type { guest | admin }] [ status { disable | enable}] [secret {simple | cipher}] no user name user-name

user access-control ip-based ip-addr ip-mask

no user access-control

user access-control mac-based mac-addr

no user access-control

user access-control port-based interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | range fastEthernet port-list | range gigabitEthernet port-list }

no user access-control

user idle-timeout minutes (The timeout time, ranging from 5 to 30 in minutes. By default, the value is 10).

no user idle-timeout

user max-number admin-num guest-num

no user max-number


## 6.3.20 vlan Command

### **Description:**

VLAN commands

### Syntax:

vlan vlan-list
no vlan vlan-list
name descript
no name
clear counters
clear ip igmp snooping statistics
clear logging [ buffer   flash ]
end
exit
history
show

### 6.3.21 voice Command

### **Description:**

Configure voice VLAN

### Syntax:

voice vlan vlan-id

no voice vlan

voice vlan aging time time (It ranges from 1 to 43200 and the default value is 1440)

no voice vlan aging time

voice vlan mac-address mac-addr mask mask [description descript]

no voice vlan mac-address mac-addr

voice vlan priority pri (priority ranging from 0 to 7, and the default value is 6\_

no voice vlan priority



### 6.3.22 clear Command

### **Description:**

Clear statistic

### Syntax:

clear counters

clear ip igmp snooping statistics

clear logging [ buffer | flash ]

## 6.3.23 end Command

### **Description:**

Return to privileged EXEC mode

### Syntax:

end

## 6.3.24 exit Command

### **Description:**

Exit current mode

### Syntax:

exit

# 6.3.25 history Command

### **Description:**

Display the latest 20 commands entered in the current mode

Syntax:

hstory



### 6.3.26 show Command

### **Description:**

Display system information

### Syntax:

show access-list	- Display ACL information
show bandwidth	- Display bandwidth rate configuration
show cable-diagnostics	- Display Cable diagnostics results
show etherchannel	- Display EtherChannel information
show interface	- Display interface status and configuration
show ip	- Display IP information
show lacp	- Display Port channel information
show logging	- Display Log information
show loopback-detection	- Display Loopback detection information
show mac	- Display MAC information
show monitor	- Display Monitor information
show port	- Display Ethernet port configuration
show process	- Display Cpu statistic
show qos	- Display QoS information
show rmon	- Display SNMP RMON information
show running-config	- Display current operating configuration
show snmp-server	- Display SNMP information
show spanning-tree	- Display Spanning Tree information
show storm-control	- Display storm control configuration
show system-info	- Display System information
show system-time	- Display current system time
show user	- Display User account information
show vlan	- Display VLAN information
show voice	- Display Voice VLAN configuration



# 7. SWITCH OPERATION

### 7.1 Address Table

The Managed Switch is implemented with an address table. This address table is composed of many entries. Each entry is used to store the address information of some node in network, including MAC address, port no, etc. This information comes from the learning process of Ethernet Switch.

### 7.2 Learning

When one packet comes in from any port, the Managed Switch will record the source address, port no. and the other related information in address table. This information will be used to decide either forwarding or filtering for future packets.

### 7.3 Forwarding & Filtering

When one packet comes from some port of the Ethernet Switching, it will also check the destination address besides the source address learning. The Ethernet Switching will look up the address table for the destination address. If not found, this packet will be forwarded to all the other ports except the port, which this packet comes in. And these ports will transmit this packet to the network it connected. If found, and the destination address is located at a different port from this packet that comes in, the Ethernet Switching will forward this packet to the port where this destination address is located according to the information from address table. But, if the destination address is located at the same port with this packet coming in, then this packet will be filtered, thereby increasing the network throughput and availability

### 7.4 Store-and-Forward

Store-and-Forward is one type of packet-forwarding techniques. A Store-and-Forward Ethernet Switching stores the incoming frame in an internal buffer, do the complete error checking before transmission. Therefore, no error packets occurrence, it is the best choice when a network needs efficiency and stability.

The Ethernet Switch scans the destination address from the packet-header, searches the routing table pro-vided for the incoming port and forwards the packet, only if required. The fast forwarding makes the switch attractive for connecting servers directly to the network, thereby increasing throughput and availability. How-ever, the switch is most commonly used to segment existence hubs, which nearly always improves overall performance. An Ethernet Switching can be easily configured in any Ethernet network environment to signifi-cantly boost bandwidth using conventional cabling and adapters.

Due to the learning function of the Ethernet switching, the source address and corresponding port number of each incoming and outgoing packet are stored in a routing table. This information is subsequently used to filter packets whose destination address is on the same segment as the source address. This confines network traffic to its respective domain and reduce the overall load on the network.



The Managed Switch performs **"Store and forward"** therefore, no error packets occur. More reliably, it reduces the re-transmission rate. No packet loss will occur.

# 7.5 Auto-Negotiation

The STP ports on the Managed Switch have built-in **"Auto-negotiation"**. This technology automatically sets the best possible bandwidth when a connection is established with another network device (usually at Power On or Reset). This is done by detect the modes and speeds at the second of both device is connected and capable of, both 10Base-T and 100Base-TX devices can connect with the port in either Half- or Full-Duplex mode. 1000Base-T can be only connected in Full-duplex mode.



# 8. TROUBLESHOOTING

This chapter contains information to help you solve your issue. If the Managed Switch is not functioning properly, make sure the Managed Switch is set up according to instructions in this manual.

### The Link LED is not lit

### Solution:

Check the cable connection and remove duplex mode of the Managed Switch.

### Some stations cannot talk to other stations located on the other port

#### Solution:

Please check the VLAN settings, trunk settings, or port enabled / disabled status.

#### Performance is bad

#### Solution:

Check the full duplex status of the Managed Switch. If the Managed Switch is set to full duplex and the partner is set to half duplex, then the performance will be poor. Please also check the in/out rate of the port.

#### Why the Managed Switch doesn't connect to the network

#### Solution:

- 1. Check the LNK/ACT LED on the Managed Switch.
- 2. Try another port on the Managed Switch.
- 3. Make sure the cable is installed properly.
- 4. Make sure the cable is the right type.
- 5. Turn off the power. After a while, turn on power again.

### **100Base-TX port link LED is lit, but the traffic is irregular**

#### Solution:

Check that the attached device is not set to dedicate full duplex. Some devices use a physical or software switch to change duplex modes. Auto-negotiation may not recognize this type of full-duplex setting.

### Switch does not power up

### Solution:

- 1. AC power cord not inserted or faulty
- 2. Check whether the AC power cord is inserted correctly
- 3. Replace the power cord if the cord is inserted correctly; check that the AC power source is working by connecting a different device in place of the switch.
- 4. If that device works, refer to the next step.
- 5. If that device does not work, check the AC power



### IP Address has been changed or forgotten (like admin and password) –

To reset the IP address to the default IP Address "**192.168.0.100**" or reset the password to default value. Press the hardware **reset button** on the front panel for about **5 seconds.** After the device is rebooted, you can login the management Web interface within the same subnet of 192.168.0.xx.







# **APPENDIX A**

Contact	MDI	MDI-X
1	BI_DA+	BI_DB+
2	BI_DA-	BI_DB-
3	BI_DB+	BI_DA+
4	BI_DC+	BI_DD+
5	BI_DC-	BI_DD-
6	BI_DB-	BI_DA-
7	BI_DD+	BI_DC+
8	BI_DD-	BI_DC-

### A.1 Switch's RJ45 Pin Assignments 1000Mbps, 1000Base-T

Implicit implementation of the crossover function within a twisted-pair cable, or at a wiring panel, while not expressly forbidden, is beyond the scope of this standard.

## A.2 10/100Mbps, 10/100Base-TX

When connecting your 10/100Mbps Ethernet Switch to another switch, a bridge or a hub, a straight or crossover cable is necessary. Each port of the Switch supports auto-MDI/MDI-X detection. That means you can directly connect the Switch to any Ethernet devices without making a crossover cable. The following table and diagram show the standard RJ-45 receptacle/ connector and their pin assignments:

RJ45 Connector pin assignment				
Contact	MDI	MDI-X		
	Media Dependent Interface	Media Dependent		
		Interface-Cross		
1	Tx + (transmit)	Rx + (receive)		
2	Tx - (transmit)	Rx - (receive)		
3	Rx + (receive)	Rx + (receive)Tx + (transmit)		
4, 5	Not used			
6	Rx - (receive)	Tx - (transmit)		
7, 8	Not used			

The standard cable, RJ45 pin assignment





The standard RJ45 receptacle/connector

There are 8 wires on a standard UTP/STP cable and each wire is color-coded. The following shows the pin allocation and color of straight cable and crossover cable connection:

Straight-through Cable		SIDE 1	SIDE 2
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	SIDE 1	1 = White / Orange	1 = White / Orange
		2 = Orange	2 = Orange
		3 = White / Green	3 = White / Green
		4 = Blue	4 = Blue
		5 = White / Blue	5 = White / Blue
		6 = Green	6 = Green
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8		7 = White / Brown	7 = White / Brown
	SIDE 2	8 = Brown	8 = Brown
Crossover Cable		SIDE 1	SIDE 2
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	SIDE 1	1 = White / Orange	1 = White / Green
		2 = Orange	2 = Green
		3 = White / Green	3 = White / Orange
		4 = Blue	4 = Blue
		5 = White / Blue	5 = White / Blue
		6 = Green	6 = Orange
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8		7 = White / Brown	7 = White / Brown
	SIDE 2	8 = Brown	8 = Brown

Figure A-1: Straight-through and Crossover Cable

Please make sure your connected cables are with the same pin assignment and color as the above table before deploying the cables into your network.



# EC Declaration of Conformity

For the following equipment:

*Type of Product	•	24-Port 10/100TX + 4-Port Gigabit with 2 Combo 100/1000X SFP Managed Switch
*Model Number	:	FGSW-2840
* Produced by:		
Manufacturer's Name	:	Planet Technology Corp.
Manufacturer's Address	:	10F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist.,
		New Taipei City 231, Taiwan (R.O.C.).

is herewith confirmed to comply with the requirements set out in the Council Directive on the Approximation of the Laws of the Member States relating to Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive on (2004/108/EC).

For the evaluation regarding the EMC, the following standards were applied:

(2010+AC: 2011)
(2006+A1:2009+A2:2009)
(2013)
(2010)
(2008)
(2010)
(2012)
(2005)
(2013)
(2009)
(2004)
(2006+A11:2009+A1:2010+A12:2011+A2:2013)

**Responsible for marking this declaration if the:** 

☑ Manufacturer □ Authorized representative established within the EU

Authorized representative established within the EU (if applicable):

Company Name: Planet Technology Corp.

Company Address: 10F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist., New Taipei City 231, Taiwan (R.O.C.)

Person responsible for making this declaration

Name, Surname <u>Kent Kang</u>

Position / Title : <u>Product Manager</u>

Taiwan Place <u>10<sup>th</sup>, Oct., 2014</u> Date

Jant Hang

Legal Signature

### PLANET TECHNOLOGY CORPORATION



# EC Declaration of Conformity

For the following equipment:

*Type of Product	:	48-Port 10/100TX + 2-Port Gigabit + 2-Port 1000X SFP Managed Switch
*Model Number	:	FGSW-4840S
* Produced by: Manufacturer's Name Manufacturer's Address	:	Planet Technology Corp. 10F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist., New Taipei City 231, Taiwan (R.O.C.).

is herewith confirmed to comply with the requirements set out in the Council Directive on the Approximation of the Laws of the Member States relating to Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive on (2004/108/EC).

For the evaluation regarding the EMC, the following standards were applied:

EN 55022	(2010+AC: 2011)
EN 61000-3-2	(2006+A1:2009+A2:2009)
EN 61000-3-3	(2013)
EN 55024	(2010)
IEC 61000-4-2	(2008)
IEC 61000-4-3	(2010)
IEC 61000-4-4	(2012)
IEC 61000-4-5	(2005)
IEC 61000-4-6	(2013)
IEC 61000-4-8	(2009)
IEC 61000-4-11	(2004)
EN 60950-1	(2006+A11:2009+A1:2010+A12:2011+A2:2013)

**Responsible for marking this declaration if the:** 

☑ Manufacturer □ Authorized representative established within the EU

Authorized representative established within the EU (if applicable):

Company Name: Planet Technology Corp.

Company Address: 10F., No.96, Minquan Rd., Xindian Dist., New Taipei City 231, Taiwan (R.O.C.)

Person responsible for making this declaration

Name, Surname <u>Kent Kang</u>

Position / Title : <u>Product Manager</u>

Taiwan Place 27<sup>th</sup>, Aug., 2014 Date

Jant Hang

Legal Signature

### PLANET TECHNOLOGY CORPORATION